

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>A61B 8/00, C12Q 1/00, 1/70, G01N 33/48, 33/574, C12P 17/06</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/18856</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 22 April 1999 (22.04.99)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US98/21231 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 9 October 1998 (09.10.98) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 60/061,582 10 October 1997 (10.10.97) US 09/033,661 3 March 1998 (03.03.98) US <b>(71) Applicant:</b> CYTOVIA, INC. [US/US]; 6650 Nancy Ridge Drive, San Diego, CA 92121 (US). <b>(72) Inventors:</b> WEBER, Eckard; 4040 Miller Street, San Diego, CA 92103 (US). CAI, Sui, Xiong; 12 Salinas, Foothill Ranch, CA 92610 (US). KEANA, John, F., W.; 3854 Onyx Street, Eugene, OR 07405 (US). DREWE, John, A.; 2175 Pacific Avenue B-4, Costa Mesa, CA 92627 (US). ZHANG, Han-Zhong; 3800 Parkview Lane No. 336, Irvine, CA 92612 (US). <b>(74) Agents:</b> ESMOND, Robert, W. et al.; Sterne, Kessler, Goldstein & Fox P.L.L.C., Suite 600, 1100 New York Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20005-3934 (US).	<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i>	
<b>(54) Title:</b> NOVEL FLUORESCENT REPORTER MOLECULES AND THEIR APPLICATIONS INCLUDING ASSAYS FOR CAS-PASES  <b>(57) Abstract</b>  The present invention relates to novel fluorescent dyes, novel fluorogenic and fluorescent reporter molecules and new enzyme assay processes that can be used to detect the activity of caspases and other enzymes involved in apoptosis in whole cells, cell lines and tissue samples derived from any living organism or organ. The reporter molecules and assay processes can be used in drug screening procedures to identify compounds which act as inhibitors or inducers of the caspase cascade in whole cells or tissues. The reagents and assays described herein are also useful for determining the chemosensitivity of human cancer cells to treatment with chemotherapeutic drugs. The present invention also relates to novel fluorogenic and fluorescent reporter molecules and new enzyme assay processes that can be used to detect the activity of type 2 methionine aminopeptidase, dipeptidyl peptidase IV, calpain, aminopeptidase, HIV protease, adenovirus protease, HSV-1 protease, HCMV protease and HCV protease.		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

NOVEL FLUORESCENT REPORTER MOLECULES AND THEIR APPLICATIONS  
INCLUDING ASSAYS FOR CASPASES

5

*Description of Background Art**Field of the Invention*

10 This invention is in the field of intracellular detection of enzymes using  
fluorogenic or fluorescent probes. The invention relates to novel fluorescent dyes  
and application of these dyes for the preparation of novel fluorogenic or  
fluorescent peptide or amino acid derivatives which are substrates of proteases  
and peptidases. In particular, the invention relates to novel fluorogenic or  
15 fluorescent peptide derivatives which are substrates of enzymes involved in  
apoptosis, such as caspases and the lymphocyte-derived serine protease Granzyme  
B. The invention also relates to a process for measuring the activity of caspases  
and other enzymes involved in apoptosis in living or dead whole cells, cell lines  
or tissue samples derived from any healthy, diseased, infected or cancerous organ  
or tissue. The invention also relates to the use of the fluorogenic or fluorescent  
20 substrates in a novel assay system for discovering or detecting inhibitors or  
inducers of apoptosis in compound collections or compound libraries.  
Furthermore, the invention relates to the use of the fluorogenic or fluorescent  
substrates in determining the sensitivity of cancer cells to treatment with  
chemotherapeutic drugs. The invention also relates to novel fluorogenic or  
25 fluorescent peptide derivatives which are substrates of exopeptidases such as  
aminopeptidase A and N, methionine aminopeptidase and dipeptidyl-peptidase  
IV, endopeptidases such as calpain, proteases such as HIV proteases, HCMV  
protease, HSV protease, HCV protease and adenovirus protease.

### *Related Art*

Organisms eliminate unwanted cells by a process variously known as regulated cell death, programmed cell death or apoptosis. Such cell death occurs  
5 as a normal aspect of animal development as well as in tissue homeostasis and aging (Glucksmann, A., *Biol. Rev. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* 26:59-86 (1951); Glucksmann, A., *Archives de Biologie* 76:419-437 (1965); Ellis *et al.*, *Dev.* 112:591-603 (1991); Vaux *et al.*, *Cell* 76:777-779 (1994)). Apoptosis regulates cell number, facilitates morphogenesis, removes harmful or otherwise abnormal  
10 cells and eliminates cells that have already performed their function. Additionally, apoptosis occurs in response to various physiological stresses, such as hypoxia or ischemia (PCT published application WO96/20721).

There are a number of morphological changes shared by cells experiencing regulated cell death, including plasma and nuclear membrane blebbing, cell  
15 shrinkage (condensation of nucleoplasm and cytoplasm), organelle relocation and compaction, chromatin condensation and production of apoptotic bodies (membrane enclosed particles containing intracellular material) (Orrenius, S., *J. Internal Medicine* 237:529-536 (1995)).

Apoptosis is achieved through an endogenous mechanism of cellular suicide (Wyllie, A. H., in *Cell Death in Biology and Pathology*, Bowen and  
20 Lockshin, eds., Chapman and Hall (1981), pp. 9-34). A cell activates its internally encoded suicide program as a result of either internal or external signals. The suicide program is executed through the activation of a carefully regulated genetic program (Wyllie *et al.*, *Int. Rev. Cyt.* 68:251 (1980); Ellis *et al.*,  
25 *Ann. Rev. Cell Bio.* 7:663 (1991)). Apoptotic cells and bodies are usually recognized and cleared by neighboring cells or macrophages before lysis. Because of this clearance mechanism, inflammation is not induced despite the clearance of great numbers of cells (Orrenius, S., *J. Internal Medicine* 237:529-536 (1995)).



Mammalian interleukin-1 $\beta$  (IL-1 $\beta$ ) plays an important role in various pathologic processes, including chronic and acute inflammation and autoimmune diseases (Oppenheim, J. H. et. al. *Immunology Today*, 7, 45-56 (1986)). IL-1 $\beta$  is synthesized as a cell associated precursor polypeptide (pro-IL-1 $\beta$ ) that is unable to bind IL-1 receptors and is biologically inactive (Mosley *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 262:2941-2944 (1987)). By inhibiting conversion of precursor IL-1 $\beta$  to mature IL-1 $\beta$ , the activity of interleukin-1 can be inhibited. IL-1 is also a cytokine involved in mediating a wide range of biological responses including inflammation, septic shock, wound healing, hematopoiesis and growth of certain leukemias (Dinarello, C.A., *Blood* 77:1627-1652 (1991); diGiovine *et al.*, *Immunology Today* 11:13 (1990)). Interleukin-1 $\beta$  converting enzyme (ICE) is a protease responsible for the activation of interleukin-1 $\beta$  (IL-1 $\beta$ ) (Thornberry, N.A., *et al.*, *Nature* 356:768 (1992); Yuan, J., *et al.*, *Cell* 75:641 (1993)). ICE is a substrate-specific cysteine protease that cleaves the inactive prointerleukin-1 to produce the mature IL-1. The genes that encode for ICE and CPP32 are members of the mammalian ICE/Ced-3 family of genes which presently includes at least twelve members: ICE, CPP32/Yama/Apopain, mICE2, ICE4, ICH1, TX/ICH-2, MCH2, MCH3, MCH4, FLICE/MACH/MCH5, ICE-LAP6 and ICEre1III. The proteolytic activity of this family of cysteine proteases, whose active site cysteine residue is essential for ICE-mediated apoptosis, appears critical in mediating cell death (Miura *et al.*, *Cell* 75:653-660 (1993)). This gene family has recently been named caspases (Alnemri, E. S. *et. al. Cell*, 87:171 (1996)). A death trigger, such as Tumor Necrosis Factor, FAS-ligand, oxygen or nutrient deprivation, viruses, toxins, anti-cancer drugs etc., can activate caspases within cells in a cascade-like fashion where caspases upstream in the cascade (e.g. FLICE/MACH/MCH5) can activate caspases further downstream in the cascade (e.g. CPP-32/Yama/Apopain). Activation of the caspase cascade leads to cell death.

A wealth of scientific evidence suggests that, in many diseases, the caspase cascade is activated when it shouldn't be. This leads to excessive cellular suicide and organ failure. Diseases involving inappropriate activation of the

- 4 -

caspase cascade and subsequent cellular suicide include myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, autoimmune diseases, AIDS, viral infections, kidney failure, liver failure, rheumatoid arthritis, ischemic stroke, neurodegenerative diseases, atherosclerosis etc. Therefore, the discovery of novel drugs that can  
5 block or inhibit the activation of the caspase cascade would have wide-ranging impact on the treatment of degenerative diseases of most, if not all, organ systems of the human body.

Caspases are also thought to be crucial in the development and treatment of cancer. There is mounting evidence that cancer cells, while containing  
10 caspases, lack parts of the molecular machinery that activate the caspase cascade (Los *et al.*, *Blood*, Vol. 90, No 8:3118-3129 (1997)). This causes the cancer cells to lose their capacity to undergo cellular suicide and the cells become immortal—they become cancerous.

It has been shown that chemotherapeutic (anti-cancer) drugs can trigger  
15 cancer cells to undergo suicide by re-activating the dormant caspase cascade. This may be a crucial aspect of the mode of action of most, if not all, known anticancer drugs (Los *et al.*, *Blood*, Vol. 90, No 8:3118-3129 (1997); Friesen *et al.*, *Nat. Med.* 2:574 (1996). Chemotherapeutic drugs may differ in their capacity to activate the caspase system in different classes of cancers. Moreover, it is  
20 likely that anti-cancer drugs differ in their ability to activate the caspase cascade in a given cancer (e.g. lung cancer) and in different patients. In other words, there are differences from one patient to another in the chemosensitivity of, e.g. lung cancer cells, to various anti-cancer drugs.

In summary, the excessive activation of the caspase cascade plays a crucial  
25 role in a wide variety of degenerative organ diseases, while a non-functioning caspase system is a hallmark of cancer cells. New drugs that inhibit or stimulate the caspase cascade are likely to revolutionize the treatment of numerous human diseases ranging from infectious, cardiovascular, endocrine, kidney, liver and brain diseases to diseases of the immune system and to cancer.

In order to find drugs that either inhibit or stimulate the caspase cascade, it is necessary to develop high-throughput caspase activation (HTCA) assays. These HTCA assays must be able to monitor activation or inhibition of the caspase cascade inside living or whole cells. Ideally, HTCA assays should be versatile enough to measure the caspase cascade activity inside any living or whole cell, no matter what its origin might be: Cancer cells, tumor cells, immune cells, brain cells, cells of the endocrine system, cells or cell lines from different organ systems, biopsy samples etc. Furthermore, such HTCA assays should be able to measure--within living or whole cells--the activation or inhibition of any of the caspase enzymes or any other enzymes that are involved in the caspase cascade. Developing such versatile HTCA assays represents a substantial advance in the field of drug screening.

Currently available HTCA assays do not permit *inner cellular screening* for compounds that can either activate or inhibit the caspase cascade. There are only cell-free, high-throughput screening assays available that can measure the activity of individually isolated caspase enzymes, or assays that can measure the activity of caspases in dead cells which have been permeabilized by osmotic shock, for example (Los *et al.*, *Blood*, Vol. 90, No 8:3118-3129 (1997)). But these enzyme assays cannot predict the effect of a compound on the caspase cascade in living cells for the following reasons:

- 1.) Cell free assays, or assays using dead, permeabilized cells, cannot predict the ability of compounds to penetrate the cellular membrane. This is crucial because the caspase cascade resides in the interior of the cells. In order to be active, a compound must not only be able to modulate the caspase enzyme or enzymes, but it must also be able to penetrate the intact cell membrane. Cell-free assays or assays using dead cells are therefore unable to determine whether or not a compound will be potentially useful as a drug.
- 2.) Isolated caspases in cell-free assays are highly susceptible to oxidation and to compounds that can cause oxidation of the enzymes. This property of isolated

caspases makes cell free caspase screening assays highly susceptible to artifacts and has precluded successful use of these assays for high-throughput screening of combinatorial (or other) chemical libraries. Previous mass screening efforts, using cell-free caspase enzyme assays, have led to discovery of numerous inhibitors which oxidize caspases, but no compound that would be useful as a potential drug. Similar difficulties have been reported by others.

5

10

15

20

- 3.) Numerous cellular receptors, proteins, cell constituents and cofactors--many of which are still unknown--can influence the caspase cascade in living cells. Cell-free caspase assays or assays using permeabilized, dead cells do not take into account these cellular receptors and cofactors. Because of this, it is possible that a compound identified in a cell-free or dead-cell caspase assay will not work in living cells. On the other hand, a compound that might inhibit or stimulate the caspase cascade indirectly through one of the cellular receptors or cofactors would be missed entirely in an cell-free or dead-cell caspase assay.
- 4.) It is highly likely that the caspase cascade functions differently in cells derived from different organs. There is growing evidence that the receptors and cofactors that influence the caspase cascade differ among cell types. Using cell-free or dead cell assays, it would be virtually impossible to identify cell-type or organ specific modulators of the caspase cascade.

25

A potentially important application of a HTCA assay system for measuring intracellular caspase enzymes or any other enzymes involved in apoptosis is chemosensitivity testing of human cancers. It is known that there is a genetic difference in the susceptibility of human cancers to the currently marketed anti-cancer drugs: For example, lung cancer cells in one patient might be sensitive to Drug A, while another patient's lung cancer might be insensitive to Drug A, but sensitive to Drug B. This pharmacogenetic difference in

chemosensitivity of cancer cells from different individuals is a well-known phenomenon.

5 In the past, attempts have been made to determine the chemosensitivity of cancer cells taken from individual patients prior to designing a treatment regimen with one or more of the marketed anti-cancer drugs. However, chemosensitivity testing has not found wide-spread use, because the procedures involved have some inherent technical difficulties: The testing is very time consuming (six or more days per screen) and it requires culturing of the cells prior to screening. The cell culture leads to clonal selection of cells and the cultured cells are then no longer representative of the cancer in the patient. A HTCA assay system for quickly measuring intracellular caspase activity could be used to determine very rapidly the chemosensitivity profile of freshly excised cancer cells. If the assay has a high throughput, it would be feasible to test chemosensitivity of multiple samples taken from the same patient, e.g. from different metastases. This information could then be used to design a treatment regimen using combinations of marketed anti-cancer drugs to which the cells showed greatest sensitivity.

It is clear that the need exists for HTCA assays and reagents for such assays that can be employed in drug discovery or diagnostic procedures to quickly detect and measure the activity of compounds that activate or inhibit the caspase cascade or other enzymes involved in apoptosis in the interior of living or dead whole cells. A reagent for this type of cell assay ideally should meet the following conditions: a) there should be a big difference in fluorescence signal between peptide-reporter molecule and reporter molecule after the amide bond in peptide-reporter is cleaved by the caspases or other enzymes involved in apoptosis, preferably the peptide-reporter molecule should be non-fluorescent and most preferably the peptide-reporter molecule should be non-fluorescent and colorless; b) the peptide-reporter molecule should be cell permeable, therefore there should be minimum numbers of hydrophilic groups in the molecule and the size of the molecule should preferably be small; c) the peptide-reporter molecule should preferably not diffuse out of the cell once it permeates the cell membrane;

d) the reporter molecule should preferably not diffuse out of the cell once it is liberated from the peptide.

The method of screening apoptosis inhibitors or inducers in whole cells vs cell-free enzyme assay can also be used for the screening of inhibitors of enzymes other than caspases. Traditionally, enzyme inhibitors were first identified by cell-free enzyme assays. Cell cultures were then used for secondary assay to assess activity of the active compounds in intact cells. A cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate will enable the screening of inhibitors of proteases and peptidases and other enzymes directly in living whole cells. There are several advantages in whole cell assays vs cell-free enzyme assays. One of the advantages is that in whole cell assays, the inhibitor will have to penetrate the cell to be detected. Since many proteases in living cells are regulated by other proteins, receptors or genes, screening using living cells will allow the identification of small molecule compounds which interfere with cellular proteases by binding to the active site, as well as compounds which modulate protease function by interfering with transcription, translation, biosynthesis, subunit assembly, cellular cofactors or signal transduction mechanisms (or viral entry into host cells, in the case of viral proteases). Furthermore, since there is an abundance of aminopeptidases in the cells, these aminopeptidases can be used in the design of fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for whole cell assay which otherwise will not work in cell-free enzyme assays. Therefore there is a need to develop high throughput screening (HTS) assays and reagents for such assays in whole cells which can be used for drug discovery or diagnostic procedures.

AGM-1470 (also known as TNP-470) is an angiogenesis inhibitor in clinical trials for a variety of cancers. The mechanism of action of AGM-1470 was recently discovered by two independent research groups (Sin, N., *et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 94:6099-6103 (1997); Griffith, E.C., *et al., Chem. Biol.* 4:461-471 (1997)). They found that AGM-1470 and analogs are inhibitors of methionine aminopeptidase type 2 (MetAP-2). The potency for inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation and inhibition of methionine aminopeptidase activity

- 9 -

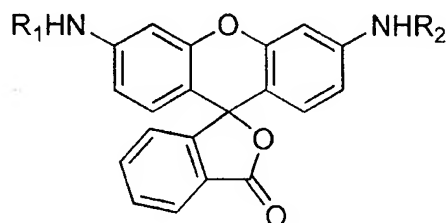
was determined for a series of AGM-1470 analogs and a significant correlation between the two activities was found.

Since angiogenesis inhibitors are known to be able to selectively kill cancer cells, a cellular screening assay for inhibitors of MetAP-2 may result in novel anti-cancer drugs. Therefore cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for MetAP-2 can be used for the screening of inhibitors of MetAP-2 in endothelial cells which could lead to novel anticancer agents.

Recently, HIV protease inhibitors such as ritonavir and viracept have been shown to be very effective in the treatment of patients infected with HIV. These inhibitors were designed based on the structure of the HIV protease substrate. The activities of these inhibitors were first determined against HIV protease. Active compounds were then tested for inhibition of HIV infection in cell cultures. A cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate for HIV protease can be used for the screening of HIV protease inhibitors in HIV infected cells which could speed up the process for the discovery of novel HIV protease inhibitors and lead to new and better treatment for HIV infection. Since HIV protease processes viral precursor proteins at a late stage in viral replication, a cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate for HIV protease also can be used to screen compounds which inhibit gene transcription or translation, viral entry, or other key proteins in the early stage of HIV infection. The fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates also could be used for diagnosis of HIV infection, which might be more sensitive than the currently available methods.

Applying the same principle, cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for cathepsin B can be used for the screening of cathepsin B inhibitors. Cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for dipeptidyl-peptidase IV can be used for the screening of dipeptidyl-peptidase IV inhibitors. Cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for renin can be used for the screening of renin inhibitors and cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for adenovirus protease or other viral proteases can be used for the screening of adenovirus protease or other viral protease inhibitors.

U.S. Patent Nos. 4,557,862 and 4,640,893 disclose Rhodamine 110 derivatives as fluorogenic substrates for proteinases of the formula:



wherein  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ , which are the same or different, are selected from the group consisting of amino acids, amino acid derivatives, blocked amino acids, blocked amino acid derivatives, and peptides. Exemplary  $(AA)_2$ -Rhodamines and  $(\text{peptide})_2$ -Rhodamines are (Z-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Ala-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Gln-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Glu-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Gly-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Leu-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Met-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Phe-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Pro-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Trp-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, (Z-Val-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110, and (Z-Ile-Pro-Arg) $_2$ -Rhodamine 110.

WO 96/36729 discloses compounds or their salts for assaying the activity of an enzyme inside a metabolically active whole cell. The assay compound is said to include a leaving group and an indicator group. The leaving group is selected from the group comprising amino acids, peptides, saccharides, sulfates, phosphates, esters, phosphate esters, nucleotides, polynucleotides, nucleic acids, pyrimidines, purines, nucleosides, lipids and mixtures. The indicator group is selected from compounds which have a first state when joined to the leaving group, and a second state when the leaving group is cleaved from the indicator group by the enzyme. Preferred indicator compounds are said to be Rhodamine 110, rhodol, and fluorescein and analogs of these compounds. The patent application listed many enzymes and substrates of enzymes.

US patent 5,576,424 disclosed haloalkyl derivatives of reporter molecules used to analyze metabolic activity in cells of the formula:



## XR-SPACER-REPORTER-BLOCK

Wherein -BLOCK is a group selected to be removable by action of a specific analyte, to give reporter spectral properties different from those of the substrate; -REPORTER- is a molecule that, when no longer bound to BLOCK by a BLOCK-REPORTER bond, has spectral properties different from those of the substrate; -SPACER- is a covalent linkage; and XR- is a haloalkyl moiety that can covalently react with an intracellular thiol to form a thioether conjugate. Preferred reporter compounds are said to include Rhodamine-110, rhodol, fluorescein and others.

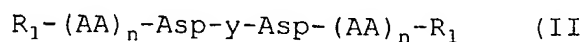
*Summary of the Invention*

The invention relates to fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter compounds of Formula I:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein x and z is the same or different and is a peptide or amino acid or acyl group or other structure such that compounds of Formula I is a substrate for caspases, or a substrate for other proteases or peptidases or other enzymes; and wherein the scissile bond is only one or both of the x-y and y-z bonds in Formula I when x is the same as z, or wherein the scissile bond is only one of the x-y or y-z bond in Formula I when x is not the same as z. y is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety.

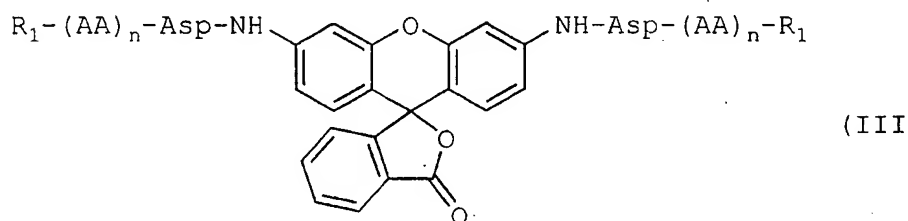
Preferred compounds are represented by Formula II:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein  $R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group such as t-butyloxycarbonyl, acyl, and benzyloxycarbonyl; each AA independently is a residue of any natural or non-

natural  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or derivatives of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid; each  $n$  is independently 0-5; and  $y$  is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety. Preferred  $y$  is a Rhodamine including Rhodamine 110, Rhodamine 116 and Rhodamine 19. Most preferred  $y$  is Rhodamine 110.

5 Especially preferred compounds are represented by Formula III:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein  $R_1$ ,  $AA$ ,  $n$  are as defined previously in formula II. Preferred  $R_1$  is t-butyloxycarbonyl, acyl and benzyloxycarbonyl. Preferred values of  $n$  are 1-3.

The invention also relates to a method for the preparation of a compound of Formula III, comprising

- (a) condensing Rhodamine together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give (Fmoc-Asp(OBu-*t*))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine;
- (b) removing the Fmoc group to give (Asp(OBu-*t*))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine;
- (c) condensing (Asp(OBu-*t*))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub> to give (Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp(OBu-*t*))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine; and
- (d) removing the OBu-*t* protecting group.

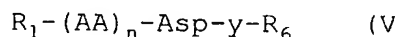
20 In a preferred embodiment, -(AA)<sub>*n*</sub> is WEH SEQ ID NO:1, YVA SEQ ID NO:2, LEH SEQ ID NO:3, DET SEQ ID NO:4, DEV SEQ ID NO:5, DEH SEQ ID NO:6, VEH SEQ ID NO:7, LET SEQ ID NO:8, LEV SEQ ID NO:9, SHV SEQ ID NO:10, DEL SEQ ID NO:11, DGP SEQ ID NO:12, DEP SEQ ID NO:13, DGT SEQ ID NO:14, DLN SEQ ID NO:15, DEE SEQ ID NO:16, DSL SEQ ID NO:17, DVP SEQ ID NO:18, DEA SEQ ID NO:19, DSY SEQ ID NO:20, ELP SEQ ID NO:21, VED SEQ ID NO:22, IEP SEQ ID NO:23 or IET

- 13 -

SEQ ID NO:24, and the carboxy containing amino acids are protected with an OBU-t group which is removed in the final step.

Another group of preferred compounds falling within the scope of Formula I include compounds wherein x is not the same as z. Preferred compounds of this group include those wherein x is a peptide or other structure which makes the compound a substrate for caspases, or a substrate for other proteases or peptidases or other enzymes; and the x-y bond in Formula I is the scissile bond under biological conditions. z is a blocking group and the y-z bond in Formula I is not a scissile bond under biological conditions.

Specifically, the novel fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter compounds of this invention are of Formula V:

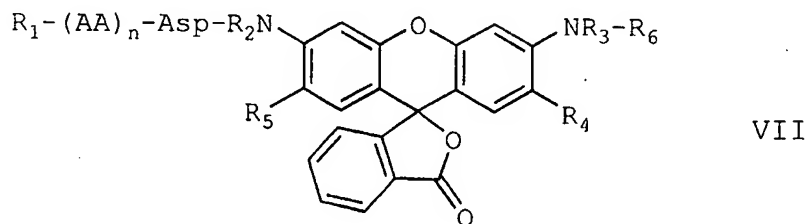


or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein:

$R_1$ , AA, n and y are as defined previously in formula II; and

$R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid.

In particular, preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula V are represented by Formula VII:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein

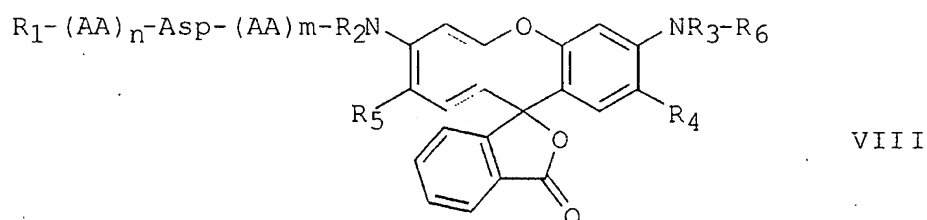
- 14 -

$R_1$ ,  $R_6$ , AA and n are as defined previously in Formulae II and V;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;  
and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

5           Another group of preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula VIII:



10           or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein

$R_1$ ,  $R_6$ , AA and n are as defined previously in Formulae II and V;

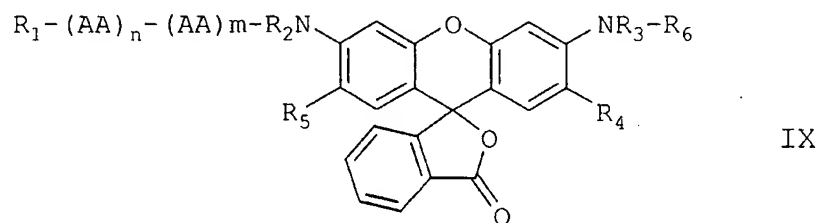
m is an integer from 0-3.

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

15           and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

          Yet another group of preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula IX:



20

or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein

$R_1$ ,  $R_6$ , AA and  $n$  are as defined previously in Formulae II and V;

$m$  is an integer from 0-3.

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;  
and

5  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

The invention also relates to a method for the preparation of a compound of Formula VII, comprising

(a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine of Formula VI;

10 (b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine of Formula VI together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give *N*-(Fmoc-Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine;

(c) removing the Fmoc group to give *N*-(Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine;

15 (d) condensing *N*-(Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub> to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(e) removing the OBu-*t* protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; or alternatively

20 (a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine of Formula VI;

(b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine of Formula VI with Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp( $\beta$ -OBu-*t*) to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(c) removing the OBu-*t* protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>*n*</sub>-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine.

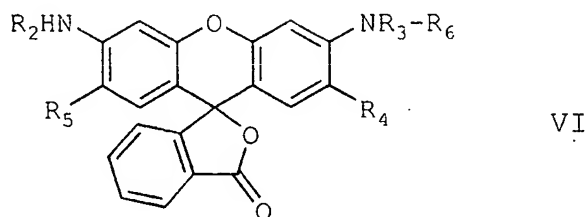
25 In this embodiment, where (AA)<sub>*n*</sub> includes amino acids such as glutamic acid or aspartic acid, the carboxy group is protected as an OBu-*t* group which is cleaved in the last step.

30 Thus, the invention also relates to the novel fluorescent dyes of Formula VI which are derivatives of Rhodamines. These compounds are prepared by introducing a blocking group  $R_6$  into one of the two amino groups of Rhodamine.

- 16 -

The  $R_2HN$  group in Formula VI provides the point of attachment for reaction with a potential enzyme substrate, such as the carboxylic group of a *N*-blocked peptide, to form a peptide amide bond. The reaction will convert the fluorescent molecule of Formula VI into a non-fluorescent peptide-reporter molecule of Formulae VII-IX which is a substrate for a protease or peptidase. Cleavage of the scissile peptide-reporter amide bond in peptide-reporter by proteases or peptidases produces compound of Formula VI or VI' which is fluorescent.

Specifically, the novel fluorescent dyes of this invention are of Formula VI:



or biologically acceptable salts wherein:

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

$R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid;

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

Preferred  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl; Preferred  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen or methyl.

The invention also relates to a process of using the reporter compounds represented by Formula I to measure the activity of intracellular caspases or other enzymes involved in apoptosis in living or dead whole cells or tissues. The invention also relates to methods of using the compounds represented by Formula I and the assay processes described herein to measure the activation or inhibition of any of the caspase enzymes inside any living or dead whole cell or tissue (normal or cancerous) by a test substance or substances. The compounds

represented by Formula I are cell-permeable, that is, they can be introduced into whole cells or tissue samples. The compounds are fluorogenic or fluorescent and can be designed to be specific for any of the known caspases or for any other intracellular enzymes involved in apoptosis.

Thornberry, N.A., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:17907 (1997), describe the optimal sequences for various caspase substrates and for the Granzyme B substrate. The optimal substrate sequences are shown in Table 1.

Table 1

Enzyme*	Optimal Sequence**
caspase-1 (ICE)	WEHD (SEQ ID NO:1)
caspase-2 (ICH-1, mNEDD2)	DEHD (SEQ ID NO:6)
caspase-3 (apopain, CPP-32, YAMA)	DEVD (SEQ ID NO:5)
caspase-4 (ICE <sub>ref</sub> -II, TX, ICH-2)	(W/L)EHD (SEQ ID NO:25)
caspase-5 (ICE <sub>ref</sub> -III, TY)	(W/L)EHD (SEQ ID NO:25)
caspase-6 (Mch2)	VEHD (SEQ ID NO:7)
caspase-7 (Mch-3, ICE-LAP3, CMH-1)	DEVD (SEQ ID NO:5)
caspase-8 (MACH, FLICE, Mch5)	LETD (SEQ ID NO:8)
caspase-9 (ICE-LAP6, Mch6)	LEHD (SEQ ID NO:3)
granzyme B	IEPD (SEQ ID NO:23)

\*Enzymes are identified by both new and old (in parentheses) nomenclature.

\*\*Standard one-letter abbreviations for amino acids are used to indicate the optimal amino acid sequences.

Using the optimal sequences described by Thornberry *et al.*, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for specific caspases can be synthesized by the procedures described herein.

It is also possible to design other fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for known or unknown caspases by utilizing known or potential cleavage site peptide sequences from known or potential natural substrates of caspase enzymes. Table 2 depicts peptide sequences corresponding to known or potential cleavage sites in proteins that may be natural substrates for caspases.

Table 2

Enzyme	Substrate	Cleavage Sequence*
Caspase-3	PARP	DEVD (SEQ ID NO:5)
	PAK2	SHVD (SEQ ID NO:10)
	D4-GDI	DELD (SEQ ID NO:11)
	U1-70kDa	DGPD (SEQ ID NO:12)
	SREBP	DEPD (SEQ ID NO:13)
	DNA-PK	DEVD (SEQ ID NO:5)
	Huntingtin	DGTD (SEQ ID NO:14) DLND (SEQ ID NO:15) DEED (SEQ ID NO:16) DSL D (SEQ ID NO:17)
	mdm2	DVPD (SEQ ID NO:18)
caspase-3 + other unknown caspases	fodrin	DETD (SEQ ID NO:4)
Possibly caspase-3	Rb	DEAD (SEQ ID NO:19)
Possibly caspase-3	Presenilins	DSYD (SEQ ID NO:20)
?	actin	ELPD (SEQ ID NO:21)
Caspase-6	Lamin A	VEID (SEQ ID NO:26)
Caspase-8	CPP32	IETD (SEQ ID NO:24)

\*Standard one-letter abbreviations for amino acids are used to indicate the amino acid sequences.

5           The fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates can also be designed to measure more than one enzyme at a time, by designing substrates that are recognized and cleaved by more than one of the enzymes involved in the caspase cascade. Fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates which are "promiscuous" for more than one caspase may be utilized using the assay process described herein to measure the activity of as yet unknown caspases.

10           When the caspase cascade is activated by a cell-death inducing stimulus, the fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules described herein are cleaved and respond with a large increase in fluorescence emission. The change in fluorescence can be measured spectrofluorometrically. The reporter molecules can also be used to measure baseline caspase activity in cells that are not undergoing apoptosis. The method is easily adaptable to high throughput or ultra-high throughput screening assays.



The assay system is very versatile. Examples of the extreme versatility of the assay system are given below:

1. The assay can be used to screen a cell or tissue for baseline activity of any caspase enzyme or any other enzyme involved in apoptosis.
- 5 2. The assay can be used with equal ease to screen for compounds that can either activate or inhibit the caspase cascade. That means the assay can be used to screen for drugs against degenerative diseases or for drugs against cancer.
- 10 3. The assay can be used to screen for caspase cascade activation or inhibition in any living or dead cells or cell lines derived from any organ system in the body including, but not limited to, hair, brain, peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands and tissues, kidney, bladder, reproductive organs and glands, joints, bones and skin. The assay can be used to screen for drugs with potential use in any disease of any organ system in the body that involves malfunction of the caspase cascade.
- 15 4. The assay can be used to screen for drugs that might modulate the caspase cascade directly or indirectly, i.e. by modulating the caspases itself or by modulating cellular receptors and co-factors that influence the caspase cascade.
- 20 5. The assay can be used to determine the site of action at which a caspase cascade modulator interferes. That is, the assay can help to pin down the molecular mechanism of action of a novel caspase cascade modulator drug.
- 25

The invention also relates to the use of the fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates represented by Formula I for finding new compounds or new uses for known compounds in reducing, preventing or treating maladies in which apoptotic cell death is either a causative factor or a result. Examples of uses for the present

30

invention include screening for compounds that can protect the nervous system following focal ischemia and global ischemia; screening for compounds that can treat neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's Disease, prion diseases, Parkinson's Disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, ataxia, telangiectasia, and spinobulbar atrophy; screening for compounds that can treat heart disease including myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure and cardiomyopathy; screening for compounds that can treat retinal disorders; screening for compounds that treat autoimmune disorders including lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, type I diabetes, Sjögren's syndrome and glomerulonephritis; screening for compounds that treat polycystic kidney disease and anemia/erythropoiesis; screening for compounds that treat immune system disorders, including AIDS and SCIDS; screening for compounds that reduce or prevent cell, tissue and organ damage during transplantation (e.g. graft versus host disease in bone marrow transplantation procedures); screening for compounds that reduce or prevent cell line death in industrial biotechnology; screening for compounds that reduce or prevent alopecia (hair loss); and screening for compounds that reduce the premature death of skin cells.

The present invention also relates to the use of the fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates represented by Formula I in screening procedures where libraries of known drugs or combinatorial or other compound libraries are screened for compounds with anti-tumor or anti-cancer activity. The cancer cells or cell lines can be derived from any cancer of any internal or external organ system in the body including, but not limited to brain, peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands and tissues, kidney, bladder, reproductive organs and glands (e.g. prostate gland), joints, bones and skin.

The present invention also relates to the use of the fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates represented by Formula I in diagnostic procedures to determine the chemosensitivity or resistance of cancer cells taken from an animal

or a human being to treatment with chemotherapeutic drugs. The cancer cells or cell lines can be derived from any cancer of any internal or external organ system in the body including, but not limited to brain, peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands and tissues, kidney, bladder, reproductive organs and glands (e.g. prostate gland), joints, bones and skin.

In particular, the invention relates to a method for detecting an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in one or more cells, comprising

(a) contacting the one or more cells with a reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into said one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more cells, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude (i.e. increase) or of wave length, within the one or more cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted or one that has been contacted with the reporter compound and a known competitive inhibitor of the enzyme, is an indication of the presence of the enzyme.

The invention also relates to a method for measuring the activity of an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in one or more cells, comprising

(a) contacting the one or more cells with the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into the one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the one or more cells, wherein the relative change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wave length within the one or more cells, compared to control cells which have not been so contacted or one that has been contacted with the reporter compound and a known competitive inhibitor of the enzyme, is a measure of the activity of the enzyme.

The invention also relates to a method for determining whether a test substance has an effect on an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in one or more test cells, comprising

(a) contacting the one or more test cells with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the one or more cells and the test substance either interacts with an external membrane receptor or is taken into said cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cells, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the cells compared to the control cells which have only been contacted with the reporter compound and not with the test substance, is an indication that the test substance has an effect either directly or indirectly on the apoptosis enzyme being tested.

In the practice of this aspect of the invention, the test cells may be contacted with said test substance prior to, after, or substantially simultaneously with the reporter compound according to the invention. The method may be used to detect whether the test substance stimulates or inhibits the activity of the enzyme.

The invention also relates to further contacting the test cells with a second test substance or mixture of test substances in the presence of the first test substance.

In a preferred embodiment, the test cell is a cancer cell or cell line derived from a human in need of treatment with a chemotherapeutic drug and the test substance is a chemotherapeutic agent or a mixture of chemotherapeutic agents.

The invention also relates to a method to determine the sensitivity of an animal with cancer to treatment with one or more chemotherapeutic agents, comprising

(a) contacting cancer cells taken from said animal with one or more chemotherapeutic agents and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the cancer cells and

- 23 -

the one or more drugs either interact with an external membrane receptor or are taken into the said cell, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the cancer cells, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the cancer cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with the reporter compound, is an indication that the cancer cells are chemosensitive to the one or more agents and that the animal is sensitive to the treatment.

The invention also relates to a method to monitor the treatment of an animal with one or more chemotherapeutic drugs, comprising

(a) administering one or more chemotherapeutic drugs to the animal,  
(b) contacting cells taken from the animal after administering the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the cells, and

(c) recording the fluorescence of the cells contacted with the reporter compound, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the cells taken from the animal after administering compared to the control cells which have been taken from the animal before the administration is an indication that the animal is sensitive to the chemotherapeutic agent. In this embodiment, the animal may suffer from a malady in which apoptotic cell death is either a causative factor or a result.

The invention also relates to a method for determining whether a test substance inhibits or prevents cell death in one or more test cells, comprising

(a) contacting the test cell with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the test substance either interacts with an external membrane receptor or is taken into the cell and the reporter compound is taken into the cell, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cells, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the test cells compared to control cells that have only been contacted with the reporter compound, is an indication that the test substance inhibits or prevents cell death.

The invention also relates to a method for determining whether a test substance causes or enhances cell death in one or more test cells, comprising

(a) contacting the test cells with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the test substance either interacts with an external membrane receptor or is taken into the cells and the reporter compound is taken into the cells,

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cells, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the test cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with the reporter compound, is an indication that the test substance causes or enhances cell death.

The invention also relates to a process of using the reporter compounds represented by Formula IX to measure the activity of intracellular peptidases and proteases in living whole cells, including, but not limited to, type-2 methionine aminopeptidase in endothelial cells and HIV protease in HIV infected cells. The invention also relates to methods of using the compounds represented by Formula IX and the assay processes described herein to measure the inhibition or activation of enzymes inside living whole cell by a test compound or compounds. The reporter compounds represented by Formula IX are cell-permeable, that is they can be introduced into whole cells. The compounds are fluorogenic or fluorescent and can be designed to be specific for the known enzymes of interest, such as methionine aminopeptidase or HIV protease.

The invention also relates to a method for detecting a viral protease in one or more cells, comprising

(a) contacting the cells with the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said cells, wherein a change or increase in fluorescence within the cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is an indication of the presence of the viral protease.

- 25 -

The invention also relates to a method for measuring the activity of a viral protease in one or more viral infected cells, comprising

(a) contacting the one or more viral infected cells with the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the one or more viral infected cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more cells, wherein a change or increase in fluorescence within the one or more viral infected cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is a measure of the activity of the viral protease.

The invention also relates to a method for determining whether a test substance has an effect on the activity of viral protease in one or more viral infected cells, comprising

(a) contacting the viral infected test cells with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into the infected test cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the infected test cells compared to infected control cells which have only been contacted with the reporter compound, wherein a change or increase in fluorescence within the infected test cells compared to the infected control cells is an indication that the test substance has an effect, on the viral protease.

In a preferred embodiment, the cells are HIV infected cells and the viral protease is HIV protease. In another preferred embodiment, the cells are adenovirus infected cells and the viral protease is adenovirus protease. In another preferred embodiment, the cells are HSV infected cells and the viral protease is HSV protease. In another preferred embodiment, the cells are HCMV infected cells and the viral protease is HCMV protease. In another preferred embodiment, the cells are HCV infected cells and the viral protease is HCV protease.

The invention also relates to a method for measuring the activity of protease or peptidase in cells, comprising

- 26 -

(a) contacting the test cells with the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the test cells, or the reporter compound is interacting with an external membrane protease or peptidase of said cells, and

5 (b) recording the fluorescence of the cells,  
wherein a change or increase in fluorescence within the test cell compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is a measure of the activity of the the protease or peptidase.

The invention also relates to a method for determining whether a test  
10 substance has an effect on the activity of protease or peptidase in the test cells, comprising

(a) contacting the test cells with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the test cells, or the reporter compound is interacting with  
15 an external membrane protease or peptidase of the cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with the reporter compound,  
wherein a change or increase in fluorescence within the test cells compared to the control cells is an indication that the test substance has an effect on the protease or  
20 peptidase.

In a preferred embodiment, the cells are endothelial cells and the peptidase is type 2 methionine aminopeptidase. In another preferred embodiment, cells are T cells and the peptidase is dipeptidyl peptidase-IV. In another preferred  
25 embodiment, the cells are neuron cells and the protease is calpain.

### *Brief Description of the Figures*

Figs. 1A-1F depict photographs of HL-60 cells stained by *N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1A), *N*-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-  
30 110 (Fig. 1B), *N*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110 (Fig. 1C), *N*-



- 27 -

hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110 (Fig. 1D), *N*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1E) and Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1F).

Figures 2A-2L depict the bar graphs of cleavage of the caspase substrates *N*-Z-VD-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-R110, *N*-Z-EVD-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-R110, *N*-Z-DEVD-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5, *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5, *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5, *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-hexyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5, and *N*-Z-DEVD-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5, by r-caspase-3 (Figs. 2A, 2B, 2D, 2G and 2J) and Vinblastine treated HL-60 cell lysates (Figs. 2C, 2E, 2H and 2K) compared to HL-60 control (DMSO treated) lysates (Figs. 2F, 2I and 2L).

Figs. 3A-3E depict photographs of cells stained by incubation with *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5. Vinblastine (Fig. 3A) and DMSO (Fig. 3B) treated HL-60 cells, vinblastine treated HL-60 cells with *N*-Ac-DEVD-CHO SEQ ID NO:5 added in the assay stage (Fig. 3C), antiFas (Fig. 3D) and PBS (Fig. 3E) treated Jurkat cells.

Fig. 4 depicts a graph showing the results of a cleavage assay of *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5 by antiFas and PBS treated Jurkat cells.

Fig. 5 depicts a bar graph showing the results of a cleavage assay of *N*-Ac-LEVD-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5 by caspase-3, -6, -7 and -8.

Fig. 6 depicts a bar graph with the results of a cleavage assay of *N*-Z-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 and *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 by HL-60 cell lysates.

Figures 7A-B depict photographs of HL-60 cells treated with *N*-Z-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 (A) and *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 (B).

### *Detailed Description of the Invention*

The fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of the present invention are compounds having the general Formula I:

30 
$$\text{x-y-z} \quad (\text{I})$$

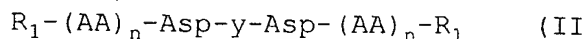
- 28 -

or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein  $x$  and  $z$  is the same or different and is a peptide or amino acid or acyl group or other structure such that Formula I is a substrate for caspases, or other proteases or peptidases or other enzymes; and wherein the scissile bond is only one or both of the  $x$ - $y$  and  $y$ - $z$  bonds in Formula I when  $x$  is the same as  $z$ , or wherein the scissile bond is only one of the  $x$ - $y$  or  $y$ - $z$  bonds in Formula I when  $x$  is not the same as  $z$ .  $y$  is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety.

Preferred compounds falling within the scope of Formula I include compounds wherein  $x$  is the same as  $z$  and the first amino acid attached to  $y$  is an Asp. Most preferably,  $x$  is the same as  $z$  and is a *N*-blocked tetrapeptide substrate of a caspase including WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26, IETD SEQ ID NO:24 or a *N*-blocked tetrapeptide substrate of granzyme B including IEPD SEQ ID NO: 23 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27; or  $x$  is the same as  $z$  and is a *N*-blocked peptide which corresponds to a carboxyterminal or aminoterminal fragment consisting of 1, 2 or 3 amino acids of the tetrapeptide substrate of a caspase including WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26, IETD SEQ ID NO:24 and granzyme B including IEPD SEQ ID NO:23 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27.

Preferred compounds falling within the scope of Formula I include compounds wherein y is Rhodamine 110.

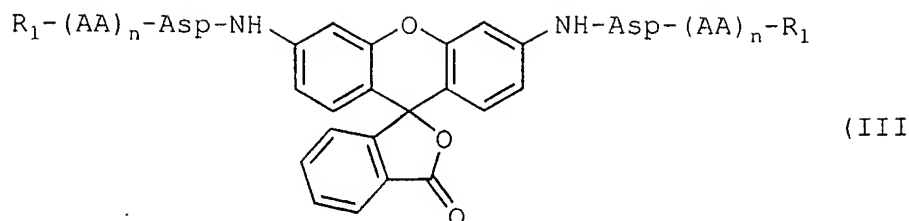
In particular, preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula II:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein  $R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group including t-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl, benzyloxycarbonyl; each AA independently is a residue of any natural or non-natural  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or derivatives of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid; each n independently is 0-5; and y is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety. An example of a pro-reporter molecule is the methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues comprising compounds of Formula II. Another example of a pro-reporter molecule is the acetoxymethyl (AM) ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues of compounds of Formula II. AM esters of carboxyl-containing compounds are known to be cell permeable and can be hydrolyzed by esterases inside the cells. Once hydrolyzed, the carboxyl-containing compounds become cell impermeable and are trapped inside the cells (Adams *et. al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 111: 7957-7968 (1989)). AM esters can be prepared by reacting the corresponding carboxy-containing compounds with bromomethyl acetate.

Especially preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula III:

- 30 -

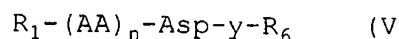


or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein  $R_1$ , AA, n are as defined previously in Formula II. Preferred  $R_1$  is t-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl and benzyloxycarbonyl. Also preferred values for n are 1-3.

Another group of preferred compounds falling within the scope of Formula I include compounds wherein x is not the same as z. Preferred compounds of this group include those wherein x is a peptide or other structure which makes the compound a substrate for caspases, or other proteases or peptidases or other enzymes; and the x-y bond in Formula I is the scissile bond under biological conditions; z is a blocking group and the y-z bond in Formula I is not a scissile bond under biological conditions. Most preferably, x is a N-blocked tetrapeptide substrate of a caspase including WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26, IETD SEQ ID NO:24 or a N-blocked tetrapeptide substrate of granzyme B including IEPD SEQ ID NO:23 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27; or x is a N-blocked peptide which corresponds to a carboxyterminal or aminoterminal fragment consisting of 1, 2 or 3 amino acids of the tetrapeptide substrates of a caspase including WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10,

DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD  
 SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID  
 NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20,  
 ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26, IETD SEQ ID NO:24 or granzyme  
 5 B including IEPD SEQ ID NO:23 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27; or x is a *N*-blocked  
 peptide which corresponds to a carboxyterminal or aminoterminal fragment  
 consisting of 1, 2, 3 or 4 amino acids of the tetrapeptide substrate of a caspase  
 including WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3,  
 DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ  
 10 ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10,  
 DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD  
 SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID  
 NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20,  
 ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26, IETD SEQ ID NO:24 and  
 15 granzyme B including IEPD SEQ ID NO:23 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27, plus 1-2  
 amino acids corresponds to the  $P_1'$ - $P_2'$  portion of the substrate of a caspase  
 including G, A, GA, GG and AG.

Specifically, the novel fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter compounds of  
 this invention are of Formula V:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester  
 form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein:

25  $R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group including *t*-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl,  
 octanoyl and benzyloxycarbonyl;  
 each AA independently is a residue of any natural or non-natural  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  
 $\beta$ -amino acid, or a derivative of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid;  
 n is 0-5;  
 30 y is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety; and

$R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid.

In particular, the novel fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules of this invention of Formula VII-IX are derivatives of Rhodamines including Rhodamine 110, Rhodamine 116 and Rhodamine 19. These novel fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules are prepared by first introducing a blocking group  $R_6$  into one of the two amino groups of a Rhodamine to give novel fluorescent dyes of the Formula VI. The remaining  $HNR_2$  group is used for reaction with a potential enzyme substrate to give a fluorogenic substrate of Formula VII-IX. By blocking one of the two amino groups in a Rhodamine, the overall size of the substrate is reduced compared to a bis-substituted Rhodamine, such as a bis-peptide-Rhodamine. More importantly, the blocking group is selected such that a) it is stable and will not hydrolyze under biological conditions, thus amino acids are excluded because the peptide bond formed can potentially be cleaved by peptidases which are present in the cells; b) it is preferably not too bulky (e.g. is small) in order to reduce the overall size of the peptide-reporter molecule so that it will be a better enzyme substrate; c) it is preferably hydrophobic in nature so as to increase the cellular permeability of the fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecule.

Preferred  $R_6$  blocking groups include, but are not limited to, an  $C_{2-12}$  alkyloxycarbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, octyloxycarbonyl, decyloxycarbonyl and dodecyloxycarbonyl; a  $C_{2-12}$  (alkylthio)carbonyl group such as (ethylthio)carbonyl, (hexylthio)carbonyl, (octylthio)carbonyl; an arylalkyloxycarbonyl group such as benzyloxycarbonyl, a  $C_{2-12}$  acyl (alkanoyl) group such as acetyl and octanoyl, a carbamyl group such as dimethylcarbamyl, *N*-methyl-*N*-hexylcarbamyl, and an alkyl, haloalkyl or aralkyl sulfonyl group such as methanesulfonyl.

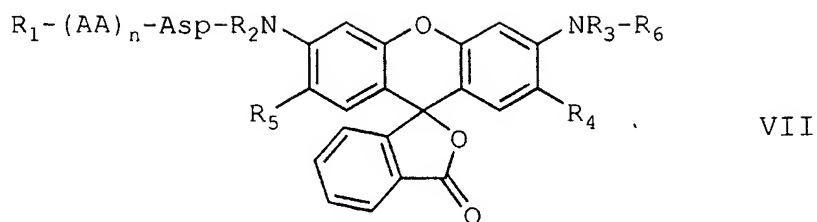
Particularly preferred  $R_6$  blocking groups are  $CH_3OCO-$ ,  $CH_3(CH_2)_pOCO-$  ( $p = 1-11$ ),  $Cbz$ ,  $Cl_3CCH_2OCO-$  and  $PhCH_2CH_2OCO-$  (carbamate series);  $Me(OCH_2CH_2)_qOCO-$  ( $q = 1-4$ ), and  $CH_3(CH_2)_r(OCH_2CH_2)_sOCO-$  ( $r = 0-5$ ,  $s = 1-$

4), (alkyloxyalkylcarbamate series); EtSCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>SCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>SCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>9</sub>SCO- and CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>SCO- (t = 0-11) (thiocarbamate series); Ts-, PhSO<sub>2</sub>-, MeSO<sub>2</sub>-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>u</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>- (u = 0-11), PhCH<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>- and CF<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>- (sulfonamide series); Me<sub>2</sub>NCO-, Et<sub>2</sub>NCO-, and *N*-Me-*N*-CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>v</sub>NCO (v = 0-9) (urea series); and HCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>CO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>w</sub>CO (w = 0-9), PhCH<sub>2</sub>CO- and PhCO- (amide series). Most preferred R<sub>6</sub> blocking groups are the ones that contain a hydrophobic group similar to membrane lipid, thus increasing the cellular permeability of the fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules, as well as retention of the fluorescent moiety in the cells after the cleavage of substrate by targeted protease or peptidase. These preferred R<sub>6</sub> blocking groups including, but are not limited to CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>OCO- (p = 1-11) (carbamate series): Me(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>OCO- (q = 1-4), and CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>s</sub>OCO- (r = 0-5, s = 1-4), (alkyloxyalkylcarbamate series); EtSCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>SCO-, CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>SCO-, and CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>9</sub>SCO- (thiocarbamate series); CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>- (t = 0-11), (sulfonamide series); *N*-Me-*N*-CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>u</sub>NCO (u = 0-9) (urea series); and CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>w</sub>CO (w = 0-9) (amide series).

The novel fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules of Formula VII-IX are prepared by reacting the amino group NHR<sub>2</sub> of the novel fluorescent dyes of Formula VI with a potential enzyme substrate, such as the carboxylic group of a *N*-blocked peptide, to form an peptide amide bond. The reaction converts the fluorescent molecule of Formula VI into a non-fluorescent peptide-reporter molecule of Formulae VII-IX which is a substrate for a protease or peptidase. It is therefore very important that the blocking group R<sub>6</sub>-N bond of Formula VII should not be cleaved and that the peptide-reporter amide bond should be the scissile bond under biological conditions. Cleavage of the scissile peptide-reporter amide bond of Formulae VII-IX by proteases or peptidases produces a compound of Formula VI or VI' which is fluorescent.

Specifically preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula V are represented by Formula VII:

- 34 -



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein:

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl;

5  $R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid;

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

$R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group;

each AA independently is a residue of any natural or non-natural  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or a derivative of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid;

10  $n$  is 0-5; and the scissile bond is the Asp-N bond in Formula VII.

Preferred  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl;

Preferred  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen or methyl.

Preferred amino acids include the natural amino acids including tyrosine, glycine, phenylalanine, methionine, alanine, serine, isoleucine, leucine, threonine, valine, proline, lysine, histidine, glutamine, glutamic acid, tryptophan, arginine, aspartic acid, asparagine, and cysteine. Non-natural amino acids include t-butylglycine and N,N-dimethylglutamine.

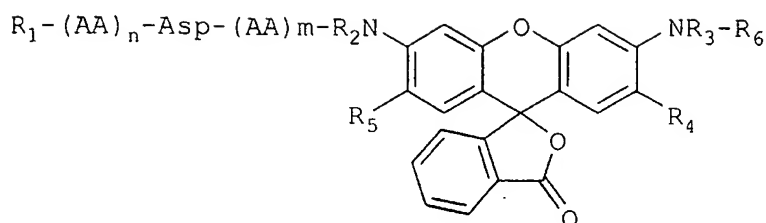
20 An example of a pro-reporter molecule is the methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues comprising compounds of Formula VII. Another example of a pro-reporter molecule is the acetoxymethyl (AM) ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues of compounds of Formula VII.

Another group of preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula VIII:

25



- 35 -



VIII

or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein

$R_1$ ,  $R_6$ , AA and  $n$  are as defined previously in Formulae II and V;

$m$  is an integer from 0-3.

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl; and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

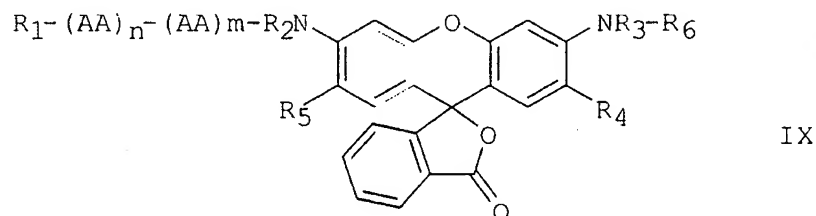
Compounds of Formula VIII are novel fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates for caspases or other enzymes related with apoptosis. When  $m$  is 0, cleavage of the amide bond between Asp and Rhodamine will convert the fluorogenic substrate into the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. When  $m$  is not 0, cleavage of the amide bond between Asp and  $(AA)_m$  will leave the Rhodamine attached to  $NH_2-(AA)_m$ . The remaining amino acids  $(AA)_m$  will then be removed by aminopeptidases present in the cells to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI.  $(AA)_m$  may be designed to correspond with the P' sequence of the cleavage site of substrates of caspases or apoptosis related enzymes. The incorporation of the P' sequence of known substrates of caspases or apoptosis related enzymes are expected to increase specificity and affinity of the fluorogenic substrates. Since aminopeptidases are widely present in cells, one can insert a  $(AA)_m$  sequence in the design of substrates of Formula VIII for whole cell assays. This is another advantage of whole cell assays over cell-free enzyme assays. For instance, when  $(AA)_m$  is Gly, a substrate of Formula VIII will work in whole cell assays but otherwise will not work in cell-free caspase assay because cleavage of Asp-Gly

- 36 -

amide bond will leave the Gly attached to the Rhodamine, which is not fluorescent.

An example of a pro-reporter molecule is the methyl or ethyl ester forms of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues comprising compounds of Formula VIII. Another example of a pro-reporter molecule is the acetoxymethyl (AM) or pivaloyloxymethyl (PM) ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues of compounds of Formula VIII. AM esters of carboxyl-containing compounds are known to be cell permeable and can be hydrolyzed by esterases inside the cells. Once hydrolyzed, the carboxyl-containing compounds become cell impermeable and are trapped inside the cells (Adams *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 111:7957-7968 (1989)). AM esters can be prepared by reacting the corresponding carboxy-containing compounds with bromomethyl acetate.

Yet another group of preferred embodiments of the compounds of Formula I are represented by Formula IX:



or biologically acceptable salts or pro-reporter molecules (such as methyl ester form of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues) thereof, wherein

$R_1$ ,  $R_6$ , AA and  $n$  are as defined previously in Formulae II and V;

$m$  is an integer from 0-3.

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen, alkyl or aryl; and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  are the same or different and are independently hydrogen or alkyl.

Preferred  $R_1$  is t-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl, octanoyl, dodecanoyl and benzyloxycarbonyl. Preferred  $n$  is 1-4. Preferred  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are hydrogen, methyl

or ethyl. Preferred  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen or methyl. Preferred  $R_6$  blocking groups include, but are not limited to, an  $C_{2-12}$  alkyloxycarbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, octyloxycarbonyl, decyloxycarbonyl and dodecyloxycarbonyl; a  $C_{2-12}$  (alkylthio)carbonyl group such as (ethylthio)carbonyl, (hexylthio)carbonyl, (octylthio)carbonyl; an arylalkyloxycarbonyl group such as benzyloxycarbonyl; a  $C_{2-12}$  acyl (alkanoyl) group such as acetyl and octanoyl; a carbamyl group such as dimethylcarbamyl, *N*-methyl-*N*-hexylcarbamyl; and an alkyl, haloalkyl or aralkyl sulfonyl group such as methanesulfonyl.

In Formula IX,  $(AA)_m$  is designed to be an amino acid or a peptide which is recognized by a specific peptidase or protease as the sequence in the p side and will be cleaved by the targeted peptidase or protease.  $(AA)_m$  is designed to be an amino acid or peptide which is recognized by a specific peptidase or protease as the sequence in the P' side, and which can be removed by aminopeptidases presented in the cells. When  $R_1$  is a *N*-terminal protecting group such as a *t*-butyloxycarbonyl, Cbz or acetyl, compounds of Formula IX are substrates for endopeptidases such as cathepsin D or protease such as HIV protease; when  $R_1$  is H, compounds of Formula IX are substrates for exopeptidases such as methionine aminopeptidase.

Specifically, compounds of Formula IX are designed to be substrates of type 2 methionine aminopeptidase (MetAP-2). MetAP-2 was identified recently by two research groups (Griffith, E.C., *et al.*, *Chem. Biol.* 4:461-471 (1997) and Sin, N., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:6099-6103 (1997)) to be the common target of angiogenesis inhibitor AGM-1470, an anti-cancer drug currently undergoing clinical trials. MetAP-2 is a bifunctional enzyme which also regulate protein synthesis by affecting the phosphorylation state of eIF-2. AGM-1470 is reported to only inhibit the aminopeptidase activity of MetAP-2 and have no effect on the regulatory activity of MetAP-2 (Griffith, E.C., *et al.*, *Chem. Biol.* 4:461-471 (1997)). Since angiogenesis inhibitor such as AGM-1470 is known to

be able to selectively kill cancer cells, inhibitors of MetAP-2 are expected to have anti-angiogenic properties and to be potential novel anticancer agents.

MetAP-2 is a cobalt-dependent enzyme that hydrolyzes the amino-terminal methionine from certain proteins. Its preferred substrates are Met-X-Y. X is an amino acid with small and uncharged side groups, such as Gly, Ala, Ser, whereas Leu, Met, Arg and Tyr are known to result in inactive substrates. Y can be Ser, Met, Gly or other amino acids (Li, X. & Chang Y.-H., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Com.* 227:152-159 (1996)). Since Rhodamine is much larger than an amino acid, a compound with methionine directly attached to Rhodamine most probably will not be a substrate for MetAP-2. Taking advantage of the presence of aminopeptidase in whole cells, the insertion of a (AA)<sub>m</sub> sequence between methionine and Rhodamine will make a good substrate for MetAP-2. This type of substrate is expected to work well in a whole cell assay but otherwise will not work in a cell-free MetAP-2 enzyme assay.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of MetAP-2, preferred R<sub>1</sub> is H, preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Met, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Gly, Ala, Gly-Gly, Ala-Gly or Gly-Ala. The methionine will be cleaved by type 2 methionine aminopeptidase in endothelial cells to give the Rhodamine attached to (AA)<sub>m</sub>. Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then remove the (AA)<sub>m</sub> to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the screening of inhibitors of MetAP-2 in endothelial cells, which is expected to lead to the identification of novel anti-cancer drugs.

Compounds of Formula IX also can be designed to be substrates of HIV protease. HIV protease is an aspartic protease which processes polypeptides transcribed from the *gag* and *pol* genes and is essential for the maturation of infectious virus. Therefore HIV protease has been one of the major targets for chemotherapeutic intervention of HIV. Recently, several HIV protease inhibitors have shown great potential in the treatment of HIV and have been approved for marketing. Most of these HIV protease inhibitors were designed based on the structure of the substrates of the protease. Therefore these compounds are either

peptides or peptidomimetics. The search for new and novel HIV protease inhibitors is expected to provide more efficacious drugs for the fight against this deadly disease.

The preferred substrates of HIV protease are peptides with a scissile hydrophobic-hydrophobic or aromatic-proline peptide bond between the P<sub>1</sub>-P<sub>1</sub>' (West, M.L., and Fairlie, D.P., *Trans. Pharm. Sci.* 16:67-74 (1995)). Nine distinct sites in the viral gag and gag-pol proteins have been found to be cleaved by the protease (Martin, J.A., *et al.*, *Prog. Med. Chem.* 32:239-287 (1995)). The P<sub>4</sub>-P<sub>3</sub>' sequences of these nine sites are Ser-Gln-Asn-Tyr-Pro-Ile-Val SEQ ID NO:28, Ala-Arg-Val-Leu-Ala-Glu-Ala SEQ ID NO:29, Ala-Thr-Ile-Met-Met-Gln-Arg SEQ ID NO:30, Arg-Gln-Ala-Asn-Phe-Leu-Gly SEQ ID NO:31, Pro-Gly-Asn-Phe-Leu-Gln-Ser SEQ ID NO:32, Ser-Phe-Ser-Phe-Pro-Gln-Ile SEQ ID NO:33, Thr-Leu-Asn-Phe-Pro-Ile-Ser SEQ ID NO:34, Ala-Glu-Thr-Phe-Tyr-Val-Asp SEQ ID NO:35 and Arg-Lys-Val-Leu-Phe-Leu-Asp SEQ ID NO:36. Many fluorogenic, radioactive, or chromogenic substrates of HIV protease have been prepared based on these natural substrates for HIV protease activity assays. An intramolecularly quenched fluorogenic substrate, 2-aminobenzoyl-Thr-Ile-Nle-(4-NO<sub>2</sub>-Phe)-Gln-Arg-NH<sub>2</sub> SEQ ID NO:141, wherein the scissile bond is the Nle-(4-NO<sub>2</sub>-Phe), was prepared based on the p24/p15 cleavage site-derived hexapeptide substrate (Toth, M.V., and Marshall, G.R., *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 36:544-550 (1990)). A fluorometric assay for HIV-protease activity using HPLC with the substrate *N*-Dns-Ser-Gln-Asn-Tyr-Pro-Ile-Val SEQ ID NO:28 was reported by Tamburini *et al.* (Tamburini, P.P., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 186:363-368 (1990)), wherein the Tyr-Pro is the scissile bond. Many other HIV protease substrates incorporating sequences from both the P side and P' side of the cleavage sites of HIV protease substrates have been developed, and these include the fluorogenic *N*-alpha-benzoyl-Arg-Gly-Phe-Pro-MeO-beta-naphthylamide SEQ ID NO:37, which contains the Phe-Pro dipeptide bond recognized by HIV-1 protease (Tyagi, S.C., and Carter, C.A., *Anal. Biochem.* 200:143-148 (1992)); the radiolabeled heptapeptide substrate, [tyrosyl-3,5-<sup>3</sup>H]Ac-Ser-Gln-Asn-Tyr-Pro-Val-Val-NH<sub>2</sub>

- 40 -

SEQ ID NO:38, which is based on the p17-p24 cleavage site Tyr-Pro found in the viral polyprotein substrate Pr55gag (Hyland, L.J., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 188:408-415 (1990)); the angiotensin I-based peptide Asp-Arg-Val-Tyr-Ile-His-Pro-Phe-His-Leu-Leu-Glu-Glu-Ser SEQ ID NO:39, which yields angiotensin I (Ang I) and Leu-Glu-Glu-Ser SEQ ID NO:40 (Evans, D.B., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 206:288-292 (1992)); the intramolecular fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) substrate 4-(4-dimethylaminophenylazo)benzoic acid (DABCYL)-Ser-Gln-Asn-Tyr-Pro-Ile-Val-Gln-5-[(2-aminoethyl)amino]naphthalene-1 sulfonic acid (EDANS), wherein Tyr-Pro is the cleavage site (Matayoshi, E.D., *et al.*, *Science* 247:954-958 (1990)); and the chromophoric peptide substrates H-Ser-Gln-Asn-Leu-Phe(NO<sub>2</sub>)-Leu-Asp-Gly-NH<sub>2</sub> SEQ ID NO:42 and acetyl-Arg-Lys-Ile-Leu-Phe(NO<sub>2</sub>)-Leu-Asp-Gly-NH<sub>2</sub> SEQ ID NO:43, wherein the amide bond between the *p*-nitrophenylalanyl and leucyl residues is the scissile bond. In addition, the chromogenic substrate, Lys-Ala-Arg-Val-Leu-Phe(NO<sub>2</sub>)-Glu-Ala-Met SEQ ID NO:44, wherein the Leu-Phe(NO<sub>2</sub>) is the cleavage site, was reported (Richards, A.D., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:7733-7736 (1990)). SAR studies found that substitution of the Leu residue in P<sub>1</sub> with norleucine, Met, Phe, or Tyr had minimal effects on the kinetic parameters ( $K_{cat}$  and  $K_{cat}/K_m$ ), as determined at different pH values, whereas peptides containing Ile or Val in P<sub>1</sub> were found to hydrolyze extremely slowly. Taking advantage of the presence of non-specific aminopeptidases in whole cells, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of HIV protease of Formula IX can be designed to incorporate amino acids from both the P side and P' side of HIV substrate for application in whole cell assays. It is expected that after the peptide sequence in the P side was cleaved by the HIV protease, the peptide sequence in the P' side will be removed by aminopeptidases presented in the cells.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of HIV protease, preferred R<sub>1</sub> is acetyl or Cbz, preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Thr-Ile-Nle, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Phe-Gln-Arg, Phe-Gln, or Phe; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Ser-Leu-Asn-Phe SEQ ID NO:54, or Leu-Asn-Phe, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Pro-Ile-Val, Pro-Ile, or Pro; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is

Ser-Gln-Asn-Tyr SEQ ID NO:45, or Gln-Asn-Tyr, and preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Pro-Ile-Val-Gln SEQ ID NO:46, Pro-Ile-Val, Pro-Val-Val-NH<sub>2</sub>, Pro-Val-NH<sub>2</sub>, Pro-Ile, or Pro; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Arg-Gly-Phe, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Pro; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Lys-Ala-Arg-Val-Leu SEQ ID NO:47, Ala-Arg-Val-Leu SEQ ID NO:48, or Arg-Val-Leu, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Phe-Glu-Ala-Met SEQ ID NO:49, Phe-Glu-Ala, Phe-Glu, or Phe; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Pro-Phe-His-Leu SEQ ID NO:50, or Phe-His-Leu, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Leu-Glu-Glu-Ser SEQ ID NO:40, Leu-Glu-Glu, Leu-Glu, or Leu; or preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Ser-Gln-Asn-Leu-Phe SEQ ID NO:140, Gln-Asn-Leu-Phe SEQ ID NO:51, Asn-Leu-Phe, Arg-Lys-Ile-Leu-Phe SEQ ID NO:52, Lys-Ile-Leu-Phe SEQ ID NO:53, or Ile-Leu-Phe, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Leu-Asp-Gly-NH<sub>2</sub>, Leu-Asp-NH<sub>2</sub>, or Leu-NH<sub>2</sub>. More preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Ser-Leu-Asn-Phe SEQ ID NO:54, or Leu-Asn-Phe, and more preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Pro-Ile-Val, Pro-Ile, or Pro; or more preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Arg-Gly-Phe, and more preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Pro.

Substrates of HIV protease of Formula IX are expected to work in whole cell assays but otherwise will not work in cell-free enzyme assays. Cleavage of the (AA)<sub>n</sub>-(AA)<sub>m</sub> amide bond by HIV protease in HIV infected cells will give the Rhodamine attached to (AA)<sub>m</sub>. Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then remove the (AA)<sub>m</sub> to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the screening of inhibitors of HIV protease in HIV infected cells. This should speed up the process for the discovery of novel HIV protease inhibitors, especially the discovery of non-peptide or non-peptidomimetic HIV protease inhibitors, which might lead to better anti-HIV agents than currently available drugs. Since HIV protease processes viral precursor proteins at a late stage in viral replication, a cell permeable fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate for an HIV protease also can be used to screen compounds which inhibit gene transcription or translation, viral entry, or other key proteins in the early stage of HIV infection. Therefore this method can lead to the identification of inhibitors of HIV infections with a novel mechanism, which could not be identified in a cell-free enzyme assay. In addition, since HIV

protease in HIV infected cells will cleave the cell permeable substrates of Formula IX to produce the fluorescent dye of Formula VI inside the cells, substrates of Formula V also can be used for the diagnosis of HIV infection.

Compounds of Formula IX also can be designed to be substrates of adenovirus protease. Adenovirus are the cause of several diseases including sporadic respiratory disease and epidemic acute respiratory disease which can lead to pneumonia. Adenovirus protease is a cysteine protease which cleaves several viral proteins and is required for virus maturation and infectivity (Weber, J.M., *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* 199/I:227-235 (1995)). The preferred substrates of adenovirus protease includes (M,L,I)XGX-G and (M,L,I)XGG-X. The specificity of the substrates are mainly determined by P<sub>2</sub> and P<sub>4</sub> amino acids (Diouri, M., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:32511-32514 (1996)). Hydrophobic amino acids such as Met, Leu and Ile are preferred in P<sub>4</sub>. Small amino acid such as Gly is preferred in P<sub>2</sub>. A small and hydrophobic amino acid is also preferred for P<sub>1</sub> and P<sub>1</sub>', such as Ala and Gly; while P<sub>3</sub> can accommodate almost any amino acid. These observations were supported by the recently determined crystal structure of human adenovirus proteinase with its 11 amino acid cofactor and substrate modeling based on the crystal structure (Ding, J., *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 15:1778-1783 (1996)). Taking advantage of the presence of aminopeptidase in whole cells, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of adenovirus protease can be designed to incorporate amino acids either from the P side only, or from both the P side and P' side of adenovirus protease substrate for application in whole cell assays.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of adenovirus protease, preferred R<sub>1</sub> is acetyl or Cbz, preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Leu-Arg-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:55, Met-Arg-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:56, Ile-Arg-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:57, Leu-Val-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:58, Met-Val-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:59 or Ile-Val-Gly-Gly SEQ ID NO:60, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Gly, Ala, or m = 0. When m is 0, cleavage of (AA)<sub>n</sub>-Rhodamine amide bond by the adenovirus protease will produce a fluorescent dye of Formula VI. When m is not 0, cleavage of the (AA)<sub>n</sub>-(AA)<sub>m</sub> amide bond by adenovirus protease in the cells will give the



Rhodamine attached to  $(AA)_m$ . Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then remove the  $(AA)_m$  to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the screening of inhibitors of adenovirus protease in adenovirus infected cells.

5           Compounds of Formula IX also can be designed to be substrates of herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) protease. Human herpes simplex virus type 1 is responsible for herpes labialis (cold sores). The HSV-1 protease is a serine protease and is responsible for proteolytic processing of itself and ICP35 for assembly of viral capsid (Gao, M., *et al.*, *J. Virol.* 68:3702-3712 (1994)). Two  
10       proteolytic sites have been identified to be Ala247 and Ser248 and Ala610 and Ser611 within the protease (Dilanni, C.L., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:25449-25454 (1993)). Recently, an eight amino acid consensus peptide of LVLASSSF SEQ ID NO:61 was found to be cleaved as efficiently as a 20-mer maturation site peptide, and the  $P_4$  to  $P_1$  sequence was defined as the minimal substrate recognition  
15       domain for the HSV-1 protease (O'Boyle, D.R., *et al.*, *Virology* 236:338-347 (1997)). It also have been reported that the specificity of HSV-1 protease resides within the  $P_4$ - $P_1$ ' region of the cleavage sites (McCann, P.J., *et al.*, *J. Virol.* 68:526-529 (1994)). Taking advantage of the presence of aminopeptidase in whole cells, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of HSV-1 protease are designed  
20       to incorporate amino acids either from the  $P_4$ - $P_1$  only, or both from  $P_4$ - $P_1$  and  $P'$  side of HSV-1 protease substrate for application in whole cell assays.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of HSV-1 protease, preferred  $R_1$  is acetyl or Cbz, preferred  $(AA)_n$  is Leu-Val-Leu-Ala SEQ ID NO:62, and preferred  $(AA)_m$  is Ser, Ser-Ser, or  $m = 0$ . When  $m$  is 0, cleavage  
25       of  $(AA)_n$ -Rhodamine amide bond by the HSV-1 protease will produce fluorescent dye of the Formula VI. When  $m$  is not 0, cleavage of the  $(AA)_n$ - $(AA)_m$  amide bond by HSV-1 in the cells will give the Rhodamine attached to  $(AA)_m$ . Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then remove the  $(AA)_m$  to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the  
30       screening of inhibitors of HSV-1 protease in HSV-1 infected cells.

- 44 -

Compounds of Formula IX also can be designed to be substrates of human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) protease. HCMV can cause life-threatening infections in congenitally infected infants, immunocompromised individuals and immunosuppressed cancer or transplant patients. Human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) encodes a protease that cleaves itself and the HCMV assembly protein and is essential for virus replication, therefore it is a potential target for therapeutic intervention. The HCMV protease is a serine protease and two proteolytic processing sites within the protease were identified at Ala 256-Ser 257 (release site) and Ala 643-Ser 644 (maturation site). (Sztevens, J.T., *et al.*, *Eur. J. Biochem.* 226:361-367 (1994)). A fluorogenic substrate, DABCYL-Arg-Gly-Val-Val-Asn-Ala-Ser-Ser-Arg-Leu-Ala-EDANS SEQ ID NO:63 was synthesized and found to be cleaved efficiently by CMV protease at the Ala-Ser peptide bond (Holskin, B.P., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 227:148-155 (1995)). Recently, it was reported that replacement of the Val-Val-Asn sequence corresponding to the P<sub>4</sub>-P<sub>2</sub> residues of the maturation site of the enzyme by the optimized Tbg-Tbg-Asn(NMe<sub>2</sub>) (Tbg, t-butylglycine) sequence increase significant the affinity of the substrate to the protease. An AMC fluorogenic substrate was prepared with the P side peptide sequence including these improved amino acids (Bonneau, P.R., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 255:59-65 (1998)). Taking advantage of the presence of aminopeptidase in whole cells, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of HCMV protease are designed to incorporate amino acids either from the P side only, or both from P side and P' side of HCMV protease substrate for application in whole cell assays.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of HCMV protease, preferred R<sub>1</sub> is acetyl or Cbz, preferred (AA)<sub>n</sub> is Val-Val-Asn-Ala SEQ ID NO:64, Tbg-Tbg-Asn-Ala SEQ ID NO:65, and preferred (AA)<sub>m</sub> is Ser, Ser-Ser, or m = 0. When m is 0, cleavage of (AA)<sub>n</sub>-Rhodamine amide bond by the HCMV protease will produce fluorescent dye of the Formula VI. When m is not 0, cleavage of the (AA)<sub>n</sub>-(AA)<sub>m</sub> amide bond by HCMV in the cells will give the Rhodamine attached to (AA)<sub>m</sub>. Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then

remove the  $(AA)_m$  to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the screening of inhibitors of HCMV protease in HCMV infected cells.

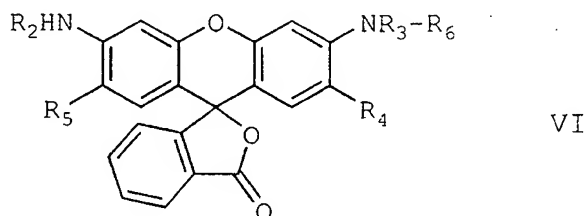
5 Compounds of Formula IX also can be designed to be substrates of hepatitis C virus (HCV) protease. HCV is the major causative agent of both parenterally transmitted and sporadic non-A and non-B hepatitis, which infected an estimated 50 million people worldwide. HCV protease NS3 and its protein activator NS4A participate in the processing of the viral polyprotein, thus the NS3/4A protease complex is an attractive target for antiviral therapy against  
10 HCV. The HCV protease is a serine protease and Cys-Ser has been identified as a cleavage site. One of the substrate sequence is Asp-Asp-Ile-Val-Pro-Cys-Ser-Met-Ser-Tyr SEQ ID NO:66, and  $P_1$  Cys and  $P_3$  Val were found to be critical (Zhang, R., *et al.*, *J. Virol.* 71:6208-6213 (1997)). Taking advantage of the presence of aminopeptidase in whole cells, fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates  
15 of HCV protease are designed to incorporate amino acids both from the P side and P' side of HCV protease substrate for application in whole cell assays.

For compounds of Formula IX designed to be substrates of HCV protease, preferred  $R_1$  is acetyl or Cbz, preferred  $(AA)_n$  is Asp-Asp-Ile-Val-Pro-Cys SEQ ID NO:67, Asp-Ile-Val-Pro-Cys SEQ ID NO:68, or Ile-Val-Pro-Cys SEQ ID  
20 NO:69 and preferred  $(AA)_m$  is Ser-Met-Ser-Tyr SEQ ID NO:70, Ser-Met-Ser, Ser-Met, Ser, or  $m = 0$ . When  $m$  is 0, cleavage of  $(AA)_n$ -Rhodamine amide bond by the HCV protease will produce fluorescent dye of the Formula VI. When  $m$  is not 0, cleavage of the  $(AA)_n$ - $(AA)_m$  amide bond by HCV in the cells will give the Rhodamine attached to  $(AA)_m$ . Aminopeptidases present inside the cells will then  
25 remove the  $(AA)_m$  to give the fluorescent dye of Formula VI. Compounds of Formula IX will be used for the screening of inhibitors of HCV protease in HCV infected cells.

The invention also relates to novel compounds of Formula VI which are derivatives of a Rhodamine and are obtained by introducing a blocking group  $R_6$   
30 onto one of the two amino groups on a Rhodamine. The  $R_2HN$  group in Formula

VI provides the point of attachment for the reaction with a potential enzyme substrate, such as the carboxylic group of a *N*-blocked peptide, to form an peptide amide bond. The reaction converts the fluorescent molecule of Formula VI into a non-fluorescent molecule of Formulae VII-IX and produces a peptide-reporter molecule which functions as a substrate for a protease or peptidase. The peptide-reporter amide bond in Formulae VII-IX is the scissile bond under biological conditions. Cleavage of the scissile peptide-reporter amide bond in the peptide-reporter by proteases or peptidases produces a compound of Formula VI or VI' which is fluorescent. More importantly, the blocking group can incorporate a hydrophobic group. The hydrophobic group is designed to increase the membrane permeability of the substrates, and to result in an accumulation of the substrate inside the cells, as well as to increase retention of the fluorescence moiety inside the cells after its cleavage by targeted protease or peptidase.

The novel fluorescent dyes of this invention are of Formula VI:

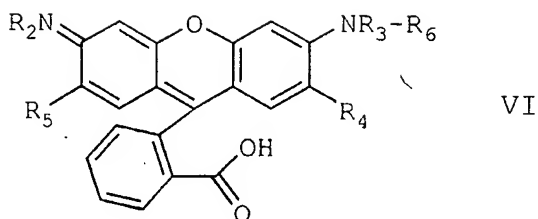


or biologically acceptable salts wherein  $R_2 - R_6$  are defined above with respect to Formula VII.

Preferred  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl;

Preferred  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen or methyl.

Compounds of Formula VI of the present invention may exist in tautomeric forms, particularly the ring opening form of Formula VI'. The invention includes all tautomeric forms including VI and VI'.



Preferred fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of the present invention are compounds having Formula II and include, but are not limited to:

- 5 (Z-WEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1
- (Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2
- (Z-DETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4
- (Z-DEVD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5
- (Z-DEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6
- 10 (Z-VEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7
- (Z-LETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8
- (Z-LEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3
- (Z-LEVD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9
- (Z-IEPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23
- 15 (Z-VEPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:27
- (Z-SHVD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:10
- (Z-DELD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:11
- (Z-DGPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:12
- (Z-DEPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:13
- 20 (Z-DGTD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:14
- (Z-DLND)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:15
- (Z-DEED)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:16
- (Z-DSLD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:17
- (Z-DVPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:18
- 25 (Z-DEAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:19
- (Z-DSYD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:20

- (Z-ELPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:21  
(Z-VEID)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:26  
(Z-IETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:24  
(Z-VD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
5 (Z-TD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Z-AD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Z-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Boc-WEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
(Boc-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
10 (Boc-DETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
(Boc-DEV D)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
(Boc-DEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
(Boc-VEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
(Ac-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
15 (Ac-LETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
(Ac-LEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
(Ac-DEV D)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
(Ac-LEV D)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
(Ac-IEPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
20 (Ac-VEPD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:27  
(Ac-VD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Ac-TD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Ac-AD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
(Ac-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110,  
25 (Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:2  
(Z-LEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:3  
(Z-DETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:4  
(Z-DEV D)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:5  
(Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:2  
30 (Z-LEHD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:3

- (Z-DETD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:4  
(Z-DEV D)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:5  
(Z-YVAD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
(Z-LE(OAM)HD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
5 (Z-D(OAM)E(OAM)TD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
(Z-D(OAM)E(OAM)VD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
(Z-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, and SEQ ID NO:5  
(Z-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110. SEQ ID NO:5

Preferred fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of the present invention are  
10 compounds having Formula VII and include, but are not limited to:

- N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-LEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Z-LEV D)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
15 *N*-(Z-DETD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Z-DEV D)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-DEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Z-VEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Z-LETD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
20 *N*-(Z-IEPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-VEPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:27  
*N*-(Z-SHVD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:10  
*N*-(Z-DELD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:11  
*N*-(Z-DGPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:12  
25 *N*-(Z-DEPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:13  
*N*-(Z-DGTD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:14  
*N*-(Z-DLND)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:15  
*N*-(Z-DEED)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:16  
*N*-(Z-DSL D)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:17  
30 *N*-(Z-DVPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:18

- N*-(Z-DEAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:19  
*N*-(Z-DSYD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:20  
*N*-(Z-ELPD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:21  
*N*-(Z-VEID)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:26  
5 *N*-(Z-IETD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:24  
*N*-(Z-VD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Z-TD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Z-AD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Z-VAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,  
10 *N*-(Boc-WEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Boc-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
15 *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Z-LEHD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
20 *N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
25 *N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
30 *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5



- N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
5 *N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
10 *N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
15 *N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
20 *N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
25 *N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
30 *N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1

- N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
5 *N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
10 *N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
15 *N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
20 *N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
25 *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
30 *N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5

- N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
5 *N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
10 *N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Z-LEHD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
15 *N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
20 *N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
25 *N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
30 *N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4

- N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
5 *N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
10 *N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
15 *N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
20 *N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
25 *N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
30 *N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3

- N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
5 *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
10 *N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
15 *N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
20 *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
25 *N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
30 *N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7

- N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
5 *N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
10 *N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
15 *N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
*N*-(Z-WEHD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Z-LEVD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
20 *N*-(Ac-WEHD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:1  
*N*-(Ac-YVAD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(Ac-DEHD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:6  
*N*-(Ac-DETD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
25 *N*-(Ac-LEVD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:9  
*N*-(Ac-LEHD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(Ac-LETD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:8  
*N*-(Ac-VEHD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:7  
*N*-(Ac-IEPD)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:23  
30 *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5

- N*-(*Z*-YVAD)-*N*'-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(*Z*-DEV D)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(*Z*-YVAD)-*N*'-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(*Z*-DEV D)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:5  
5 *N*-(*Z*-YVAD)-*N*'-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 19, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(*Z*-YVAD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2  
*N*-(*Z*-LE(OAM)HD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3  
*N*-(*Z*-D(OAM)E(OAM)TD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4  
*N*-(*Z*-D(OAM)E(OAM)VD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
10 *N*-(*Z*-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(*Z*-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5  
*N*-(*Z*-VD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, and  
*N*-(*Z*-E(OAM)VD(OAM))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110.

Another preferred fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of the present  
15 invention are compounds having Formula VIII and include, but are not limited to:

- N*-(*Z*-WEHDG)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(*Z*-YVADG)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(*Z*-LEHDG)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:73  
*N*-(*Z*-LEV D G)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:74  
20 *N*-(*Z*-DET D G)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:75  
*N*-(*Z*-DEV D G)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-LET D G)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:77  
*N*-(Ac-LEHDG)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:73  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
25 *N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEV D G)-*N*'-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(*Z*-WEHDGG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:79  
*N*-(*Z*-YVADG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
30 *N*-(*Z*-DEV D G)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76

- N*-(Z-LEVDG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:74  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
5 *N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
10 *N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
15 *N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
20 *N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
25 *N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N*'-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N*'-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N*'-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
30 *N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N*'-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71



- N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N'*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
5 *N*-(Ac-YVADGG)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:142  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N'*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
10 *N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N'*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
15 *N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N'*-(dimethylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Ac-WEHDG)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:71  
*N*-(Ac-YVADG)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
20 *N*-(Ac-DEVDG)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Ac-DEHDG)-*N'*-(*N*-hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:78  
*N*-(Z-DEVDG)-*N'*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:76  
25 *N*-(Z-YVADG)-*N'*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Z-DEVDG)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Z-YVADG)-*N'*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 116, SEQ ID NO:72  
*N*-(Z-DEVDG)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 19, and SEQ ID NO:76  
*N*-(Z-YVADG)-*N'*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 19 SEQ ID NO:72.

Another preferred fluorogenic or fluorescent substrates of the present invention are compounds having Formula IX and include, but are not limited to:

- N*-(GP)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
5 *N*-(GP)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPA)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GP)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
10 *N*-(GP)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MA)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MGG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
15 *N*-(MGA)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MAG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-G-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MA)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
20 *N*-G-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MG)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MA)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-G-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(MG)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
25 *N*-G-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Boc-LM)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Ac-LM)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Boc-LM)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Ac-LM)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
30 *N*-(Boc-LM)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

- N*-(Ac-LM)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Boc-LM)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Ac-LM)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(Ac-SLNFPIV)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:80  
5 *N*-(Ac-SLNFPI)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:81  
*N*-(Ac-SLNF)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:82  
*N*-(Ac-LNFPIV)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:83  
*N*-(Ac-LNFPI)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:84  
*N*-(Ac-LNFP)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:85  
10 *N*-(Ac-RGFP)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:37  
*N*-(Z-LNFPIV)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:83  
*N*-(Z-LNFPI)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:84  
*N*-(Z-LNFP)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:85  
*N*-(Z-RGFP)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:37  
15 *N*-(Z-RQANFLG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:31  
*N*-(Z-RQANFL)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:86  
*N*-(Z-RQANF)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:87  
*N*-(Z-RKVLFLD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:36  
*N*-(Z-RKVLFL)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:88  
20 *N*-(Z-RKVLF)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:89  
*N*-(Z-ARVLFLG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:90  
*N*-(Z-ARVLFL)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:91  
*N*-(Z-ARVLF)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:92  
*N*-(Z-SQNYFLG)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:93  
25 *N*-(Z-SQNYFL)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:94  
*N*-(Z-SQNYF)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:95  
*N*-(Ac-SLNFPIV)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:80  
*N*-(Ac-SLNFPI)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:81  
*N*-(Ac-SLNF)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:82  
30 *N*-(Ac-RGFP)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:37

- N*-(Ac-SLNFPIV)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:80  
*N*-(Ac-SLNFPI)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:81  
*N*-(Ac-SLNF)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:82  
*N*-(Ac-RGFP)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:37  
5 *N*-(Ac-MRGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:96  
*N*-(Ac-IRGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:97  
*N*-(Ac-LVGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:98  
*N*-(Ac-MVGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:99  
*N*-(Ac-IVGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:100  
10 *N*-(Ac-LRGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:101  
*N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:102  
*N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:55  
*N*-(Z-LRGGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:101  
*N*-(Z-LRGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:102  
15 *N*-(Z-LRGG)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:55  
*N*-(Ac-LRGGG)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:101  
*N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:102  
*N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:55  
*N*-(Ac-LRGGG)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:101  
20 *N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:102  
*N*-(Ac-LRGG)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:55  
*N*-(Ac-LVLASS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:103  
*N*-(Ac-LVLASS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:104  
*N*-(Ac-LVLAS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:105  
25 *N*-(Ac-LVLA)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:62  
*N*-(Z-LVLASS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:103  
*N*-(Z-LVLASS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:104  
*N*-(Z-LVLAS)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:105  
*N*-(Z-LVLA)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:62  
30 *N*-(Ac-LVLASS)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:104

- N*-(Ac-LVLAS)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:105  
*N*-(Ac-LVLA)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:62  
*N*-(Ac-LVLASS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:104  
*N*-(Ac-LVLAS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:105  
5 *N*-(Ac-LVLA)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:62  
*N*-(Ac-VVNASS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:106  
*N*-(Ac-VVNAS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:107  
*N*-(Ac-VVNA)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:64  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NASS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:108  
10 *N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NAS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:109  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NA)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:110  
*N*-(Z-Tbg-Tbg-NASS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:108  
*N*-(Z-Tbg-Tbg-NAS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:109  
*N*-(Z-Tbg-Tbg-NA)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:110  
15 *N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NASS)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:108  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NAS)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:109  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NA)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:110  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NASS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:108  
*N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NAS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:109  
20 *N*-(Ac-Tbg-Tbg-NA)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:110  
*N*-(Ac-DDIVPCSMST)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:111  
*N*-(Ac-DIVPCSMST)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:112  
*N*-(Ac-IVPCSMST)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:113  
*N*-(Ac-IVPCSMS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:114  
25 *N*-(Ac-IVPCSM)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:115  
*N*-(Ac-IVPCS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:116  
*N*-(Ac-IVPC)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:69  
*N*-(Z-IVPCSMST)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:113  
*N*-(Z-IVPCSMS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:114  
30 *N*-(Z-IVPCSM)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:115

*N*-(Z-IVPCS)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:116

*N*-(Ac-IVPCSMS)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:114

*N*-(Ac-IVPCSM)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:115

*N*-(Ac-IVPCS)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:116

5 *N*-(Ac-IVPCSMS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:114

*N*-(Ac-IVPCSM)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, and SEQ ID NO:115

*N*-(Ac-IVPCS)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:116.

where Z is benzyloxycarbonyl, BOC is *tert*.-butoxycarbonyl, Ac is acetyl, Tbg is *t*-butylglycine, and AM is acetoxymethyl.

10 Preferred novel fluorescent dyes of the present invention are compounds having Formula VI and include, but are not limited to:

*N*-formyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-hexanoyl-Rhodamine 110,

15 *N*-octanoyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-decanoyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-dodecanoyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

20 *N*-butoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

25 *N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-(2-butoxyethoxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-(2,5,8-trioxadecyloxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-(methylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

30 *N*-(butylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

- N*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(decylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(dodecylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
5 *N*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-ethanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-hexanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-octanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-decanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
10 *N*-dodecanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-dimethylcarbamyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-diethylcarbamyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(*N*-methyl-*N*-hexylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110,  
15 *N*-(*N*-methyl-*N*-octylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(*N*-methyl-*N*-decylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
20 *N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
25 *N*-octanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 116,  
*N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 19,  
*N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 19,  
*N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 19,  
*N*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 19, and  
30 *N*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 19.

Typical aryl groups are C<sub>6-10</sub> aryl groups including phenyl, naphthyl, fluorenyl and the like, any of which may be substituted with halo or alkyl groups.

Typical alkyl groups are C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl groups including methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, pentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl and branched chain isomers thereof.

5        Typical acyl (alkanoyl) groups are C<sub>2-10</sub> alkanoyl groups such as acetyl, propionyl, butanoyl, pentanoyl, hexanoyl and the like as well as the branched chain isomers thereof.

Typical biologically acceptable salts of the compounds of the invention include the sodium, potassium, ammonium, TRIS and the like.

10        Certain of the compounds of the present invention may be in tautomeric forms, particularly in the y-portion of Formula I. The invention includes all such tautomers. The invention also includes stereoisomers, the racemic mixtures of such stereoisomers as well as the individual enantiomers that may be separated according to methods that are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

15        The compounds of this invention may be prepared using methods known to those skilled in the art. Specifically, compounds with Formulae I-III can be prepared as illustrated by exemplary reactions in Schemes 1-5.

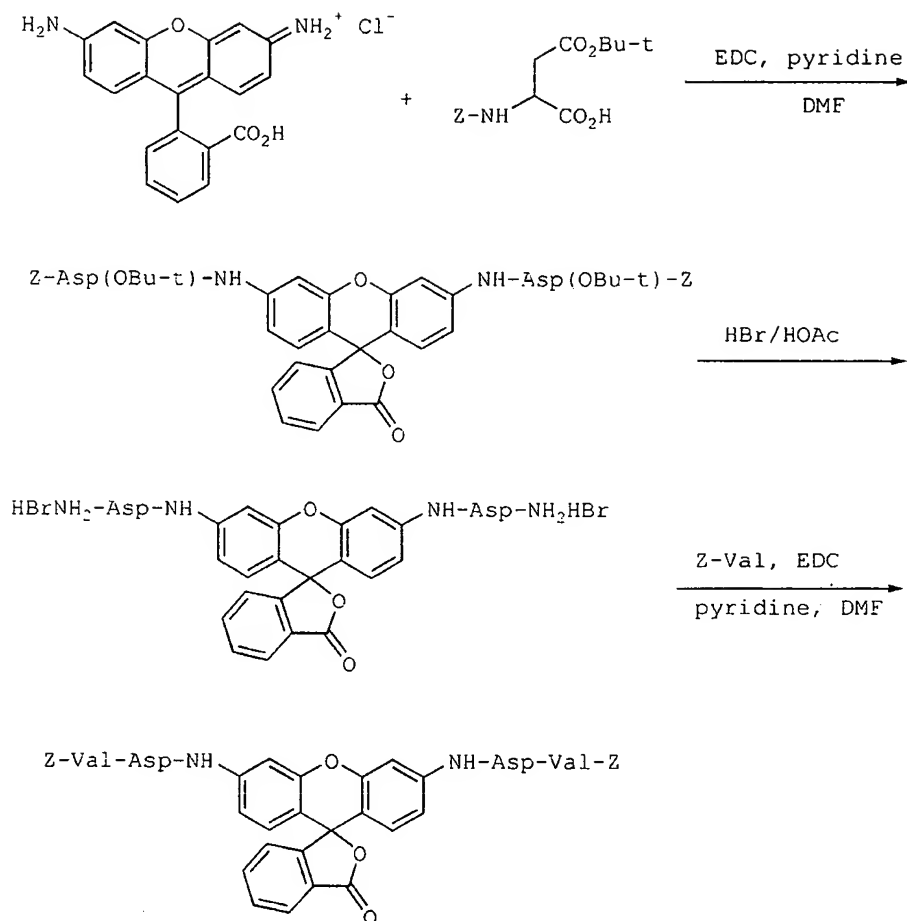
Scheme 1 is the least preferred method since deprotection with HBr/HOAc led to the removal of both the *t*-butoxy and benzyloxycarbonyl (Z) groups, which makes the next coupling reaction complicated. Thus, where the *t*-butoxy group is desired, it must be reintroduced. When an *N*-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl) (fmoc) group is employed as the *N*-blocking group (Scheme 2), it can be selectively removed with morpholine, piperidine or other amine base without removing the *t*-butoxy protecting groups, thus allowing for the ready introduction of additional Z-blocked amino acids or peptides (see Schemes 2-4). The final Z-blocked compounds can be selectively deprotected with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) to remove the *t*-butoxy group without removing the Z group.

20

25

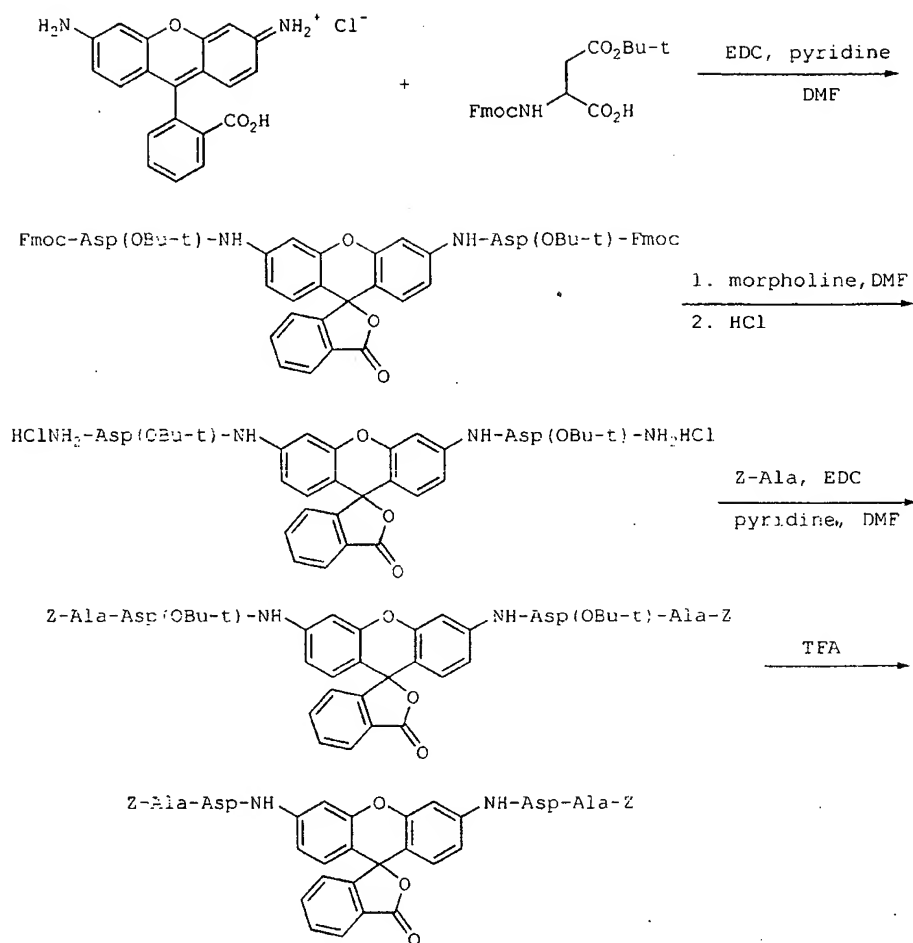


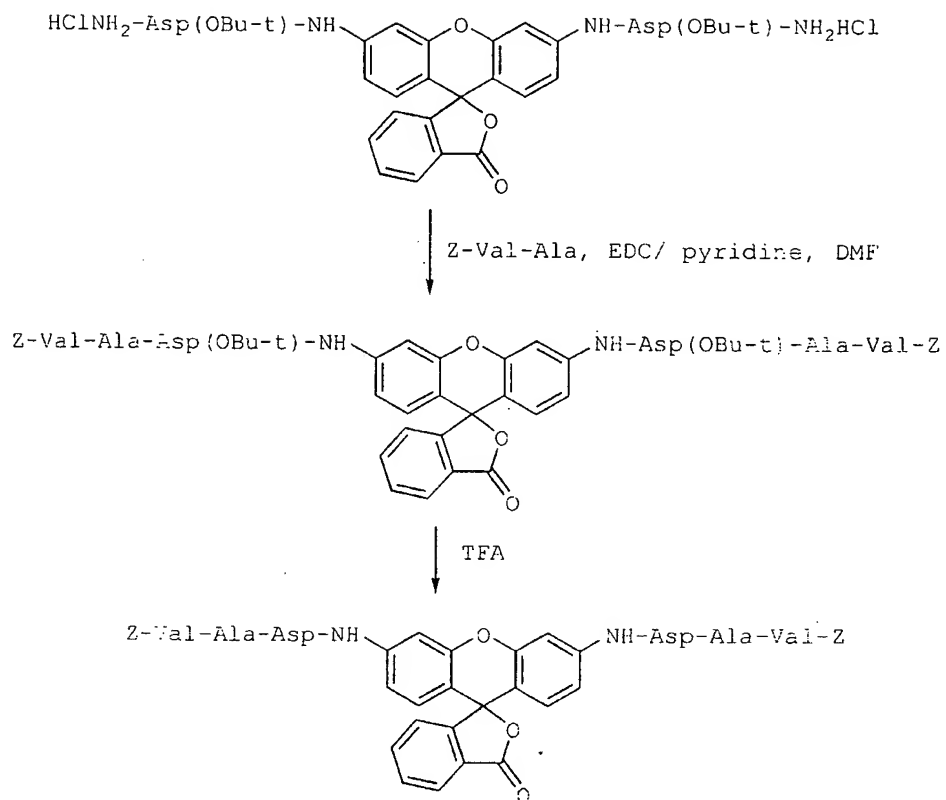
## Scheme 1

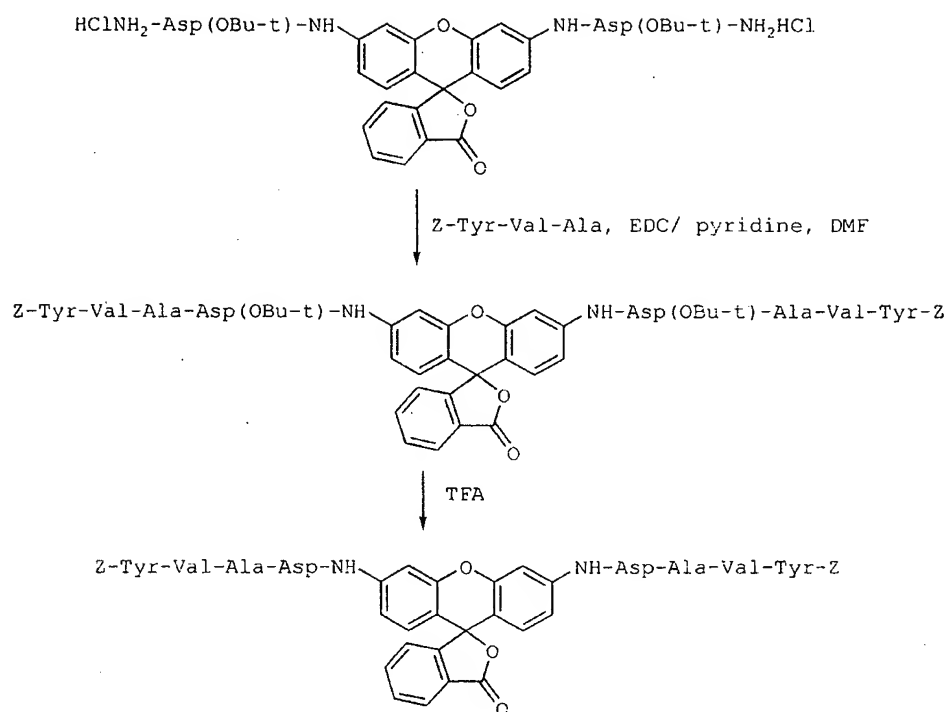


- 68 -

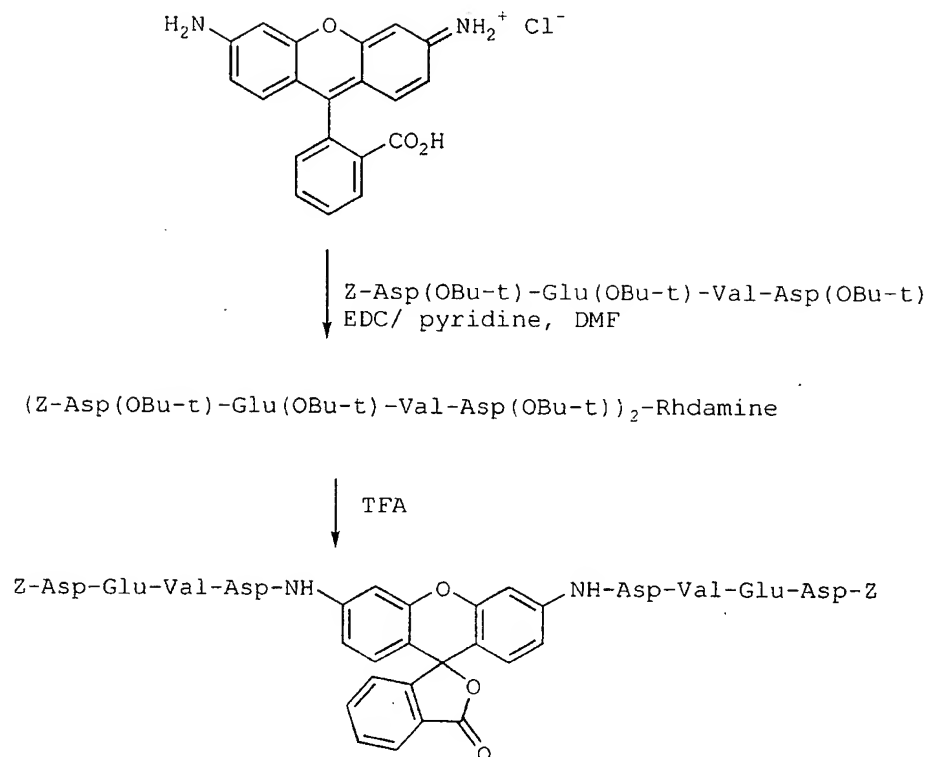
## Scheme 2



*Scheme 3*

*Scheme 4*

- 71 -

**Scheme 5**

Thus, the invention also relates to a method for the preparation of a compound of Formula III, comprising

- (a) condensing Rhodamine 110 together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give (Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110;
- (b) removing the Fmoc group to give (Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110;
- (c) condensing (Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub> to give (Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110; and
- (d) removing the OBu-t protecting group.

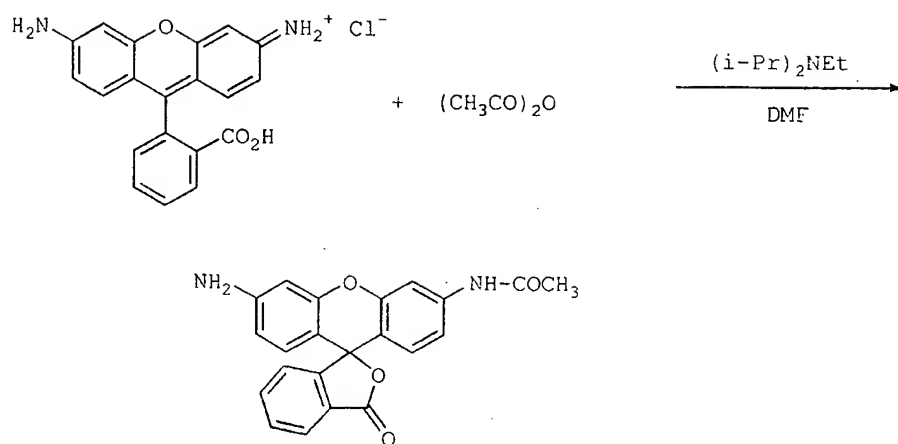
In a preferred embodiment, -(AA)<sub>n</sub> is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET. Where the amino acid is substituted by a carboxy group, it is protected with a OBu-t protecting group which is removed in the final step.

The condensation reaction may be carried out using any conventional condensing agent that is used for peptide synthesis. In a preferred embodiment, the condensing agent is 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (EDC), or 2-ethoxy-1-ethoxycarbonyl-1,2-dihydroquinoline (EEDQ). The solvent for the reaction may be pyridine or dimethylformamide (DMF). The reaction is generally carried out at room temperature. The ratio of condensing agent to Rhodamine may be about 10:1 and the ratio of protected amino acid or peptide to Rhodamine or (Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 may also be about 10:1.

The Fmoc group is generally removed by treatment with morpholine, piperidine or other amine base, in a polar aprotic solvent such as DMF. In general, the morpholine is added in excess, and the reaction is carried out at room temperature.  $\alpha,\alpha$ -Dimethyl-3,5-dimethoxybenzyloxycarbonyl (Ddz) is another *N*-blocking group which can be used in the place of fmoc. Thus, *N*-Ddz-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester can be used in place of *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester. Ddz can be cleaved selectively in the presence of *t*-butoxy group by 1%TFA in methylene chloride.

The OBU-t group is removed with trifluoroacetic acid in an aprotic solvent such as methylene chloride at room temperature.

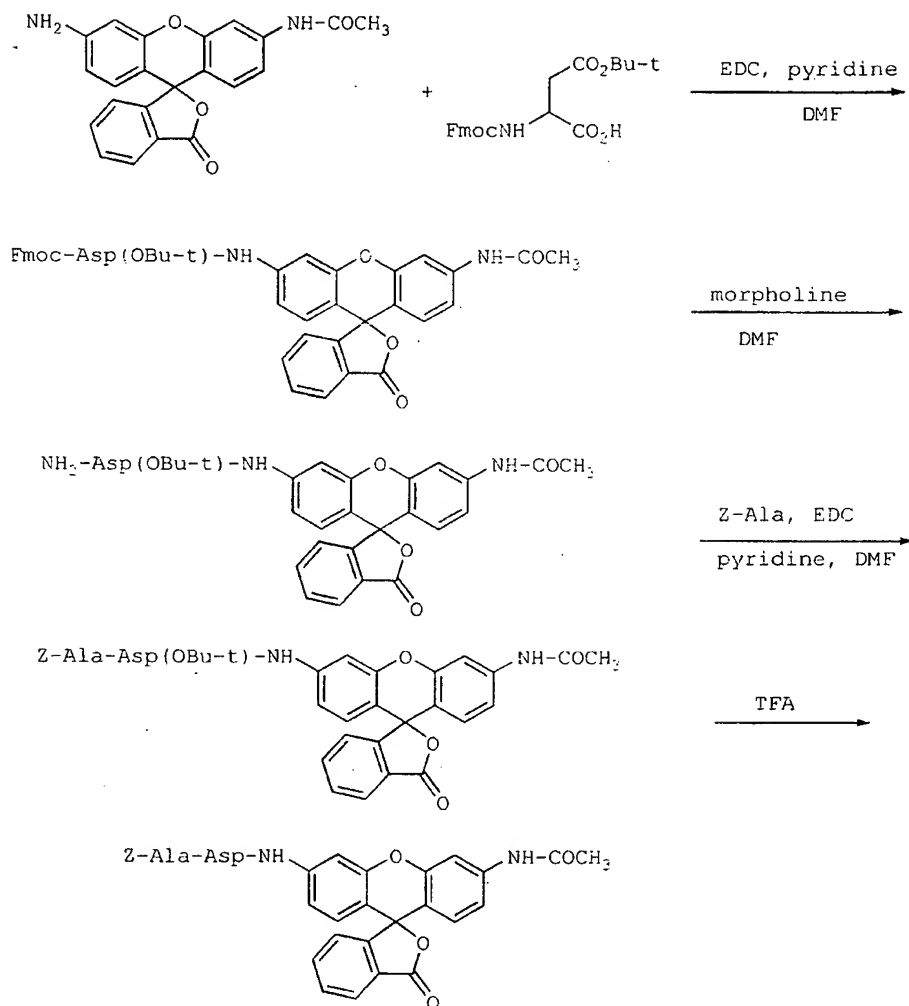
Compounds with Formula VI can be prepared as illustrated by exemplary reaction in Scheme 6.

*Scheme 6*

Compounds with Formulae VII-IX can be prepared as illustrated by exemplary reactions in Schemes 7-10.

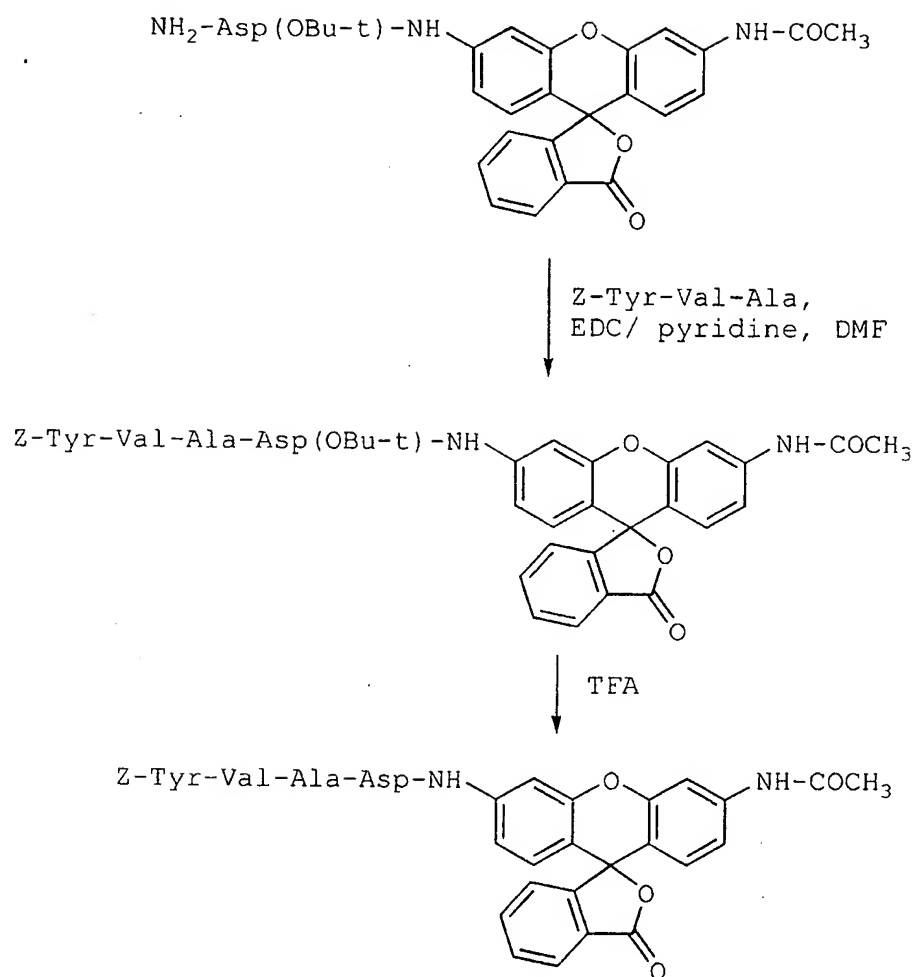
*Scheme 7*

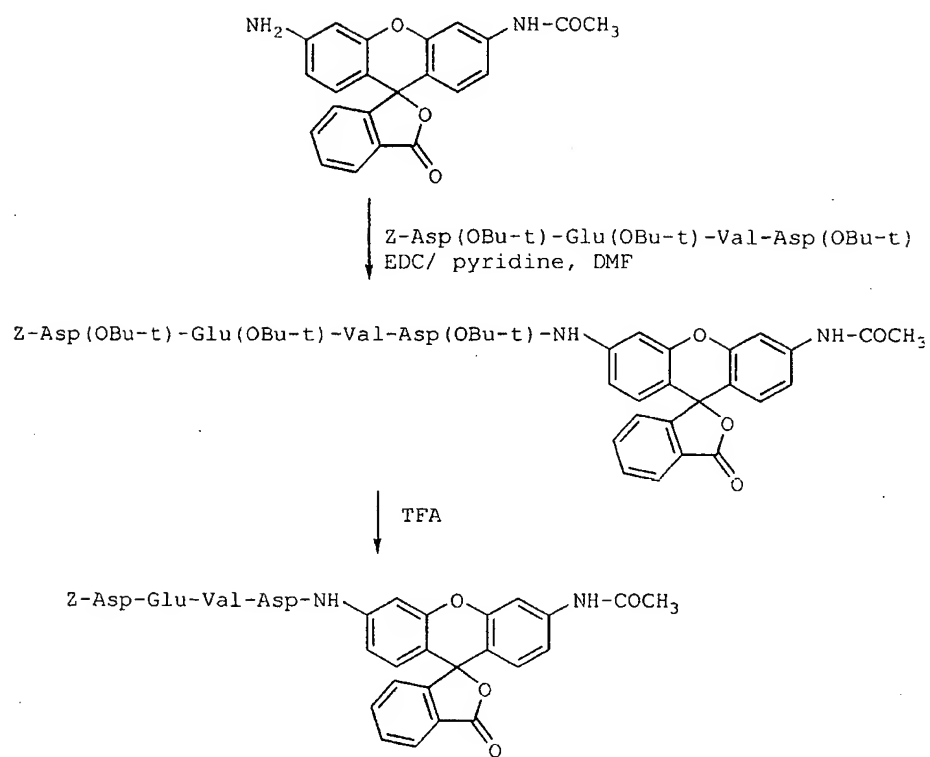
5





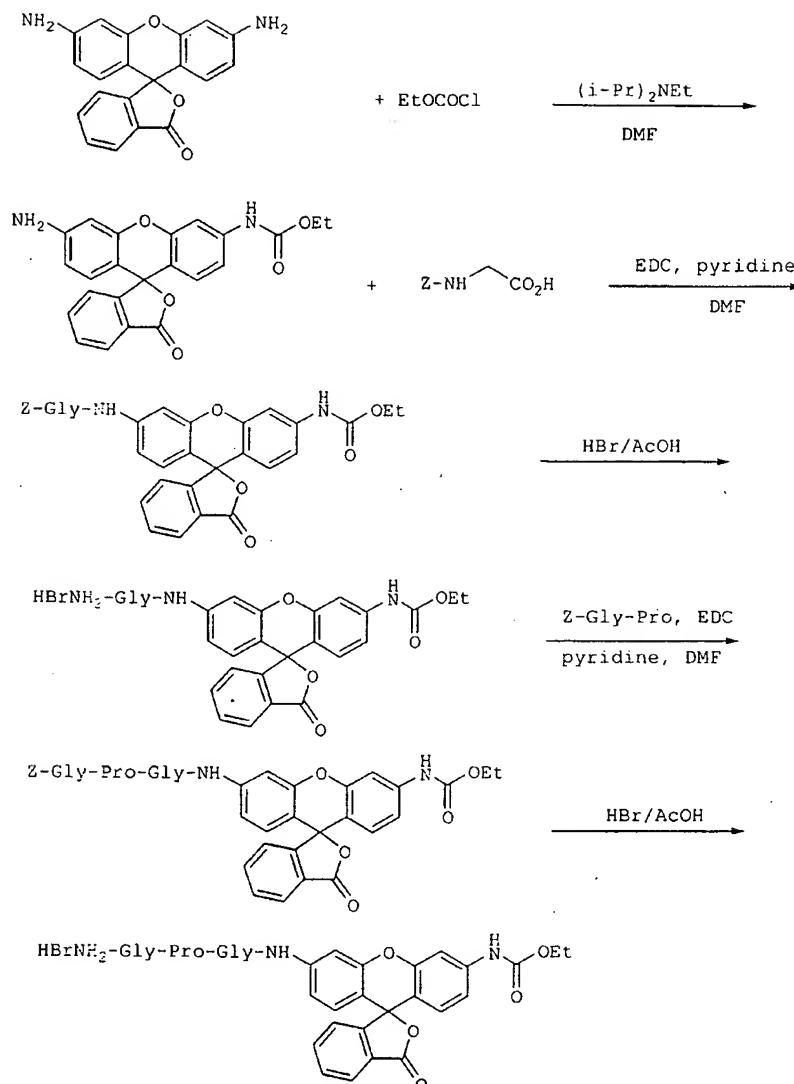
- 75 -

**Scheme 8**

*Scheme 9*

- 77 -

## Scheme 10



Thus, the invention also relates to a method for the preparation of a compound of Formula VII, comprising

- (a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine;
- (b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give *N*-(Fmoc-Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine;
- (c) removing the Fmoc group to give *N*-(Asp(OBu-*t*))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine;

(d) condensing *N*-(Asp(OBu-t))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub> to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(e) removing the OBu-t protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; or alternatively

5 (a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine;

(b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t) to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(c) removing the OBu-t protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine.

In a preferred embodiment, -(AA)<sub>n</sub> is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET.

Compounds of Formula VII also can be prepared using an acyl (alkanoyl) chloride in place of acetic anhydride, such as acetyl chloride, hexanoyl chloride, octanoyl chloride and decanoyl chloride. Other reagents can be used in place of acetic anhydride include, but are not limited to carbamyl chloride such as dimethylcarbamyl chloride, diethylcarbamyl chloride and *N*-methyl-*N*-hexylcarbamyl chloride; chloroformate such as methyl chloroformate, ethyl chloroformate, octyl chloroformate, 2-butoxyethyl chloroformate and 2,5,8-trioxadecyl chloroformate; chlorothiolformate such as methyl chlorothiolformate, ethyl chlorothiolformate, octyl chlorothiolformate; alkyl, haloalkyl and aralkyl sulfonyl halides such as methanesulfonyl chloride, octanesulfonyl chloride, trifluoromethanesulfonyl chloride and tosylchloride. The reaction is carried out in the presence of a base, such as (Et)<sub>3</sub>N, (i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>-NEt or pyridine. The preferred solvent is DMF. The reaction is generally carried out at room temperature. The ratio of anhydride or acyl chloride to Rhodamine is about 1:1.

The condensation reaction may be carried out using any conventional condensing agent that is used for peptide synthesis. In a preferred embodiment, the condensing agent is EDC or EEDQ, and the solvent for the reaction is pyridine

or dimethylformamide (DMF). The reaction is generally carried out at room temperature. The ratio of condensing agent to *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine is about 3:1 and the ratio of protected amino acid or peptide to *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine or *N*-(Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine is about 3:1.

5           Condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine with a peptide such as Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t) to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine in a one-step reaction is a preferred procedure. Thus, compounds of Formula VI provide fluorescent dyes which can be condensed with any peptide or other structure for the preparation of fluorogenic or fluorescent compounds which are substrates for  
10           proteases or peptidases.

          In principle, compounds of Formula VII also can be prepared by first condensing a peptide with a Rhodamine to give *N*-peptide-Rhodamine, then reacting the *N*-peptide-Rhodamine with acetyl anhydride or other acylating reagent to give for example, *N*-acetyl-*N*'-peptide-Rhodamine. However, a)  
15           peptides in general are much more expensive than acyl chlorides or anhydrides, b) the condensation reaction between peptide and Rhodamine is not an efficient reaction. For these reasons it is preferred to attach the peptide to *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine rather than attach the acyl group to *N*-peptide-Rhodamine.

          In one aspect, the invention relates to a method for determining whether a  
20           test substance has an effect on an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in a test cell, comprising

          (a)    contacting the test cell with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the test substance either interacts with an external membrane receptor of the cell or is taken into the  
25           cell and the reporter compound is taken into the cell, and

          (b)    recording the fluorescence of the test cell, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the test cell compared to said control cell which has only been contacted with the reporter compound and not with the test substance, is an indication that said test substance has an effect  
30           on said enzyme.

The results obtained by this method can be compared to the results obtained with test compounds which are known to affect enzymes involved in the apoptosis cascade in cells to generate a measure of the relative effectiveness of the test substance. Compounds which can be used include known activators and inhibitors of enzymes involved in the apoptosis cascade. Activators, either by direct or indirect mechanisms, of enzymes involved in the apoptosis cascade include but are not limited to known chemotherapeutic agents, such as etoposide (Yoon HJ, Choi IY, Kang MR, Kim SS, Muller MT, Spitzner JR, Chung IK (1998), *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1395:110-120) and doxorubicin (Gamen S, Anel A, Lasier P, Alava MA, Martinez-Lorenzo MJ, Pineiro A, Naval J (1997), *FEBS Lett* 417:360-364) which are topoisomerase II inhibitors; cisplatin (Maldonado V, Melendez-Zajgla J, Ortega A (1997), *Mutat Res* 381:67-75); chlorambucil (Hickman JA. (1992), *Cancer Metastasis Rev.* 11:121-139) which is an alkylating agent; and fluorouracil, an RNA/DNA anti-metabolite (Hickman JA. (1992), *Cancer Metastasis Rev.* 11:121-139). These activators of apoptosis also can be used to induce apoptosis when screening for inhibitor of apoptosis in whole cells. Inactivators, either by direct or indirect mechanisms, of enzymes involved in the apoptosis cascade include but are not limited to endogenous proteins including Bcl-2 (Joensuu H, Pylkkanen L, Toikkanen S (1994), *Am. J. Pathol.* 5:1191-1198), the viral produced agent p35 (Miller LK (1997), *J. Cell Physiol.* 173:178-182) and the synthetic caspase inhibitor Z-VAD-FMK (An S, Knox KA (1996), *FEBS Lett.* 386:115-122).

In particular, the invention relates to the use of the reporter compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII in whole-cell assays, using whole cells or tissue samples which have been induced to undergo apoptosis, to screen for compounds that inhibit either directly or indirectly an enzyme or enzymes involved in apoptosis (programmed cell death). These screening assays using compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII are expected to lead to discovery of new drugs or new uses for known drugs that slow or block cell death

in a variety of clinical conditions in which the loss of cells, tissues or entire organs occurs.

The reporter compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII and the screening assays of the present invention can be used to identify drugs that reduce or prevent cell death in the nervous system (brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nervous system) under various conditions of ischemia and excitotoxicity, including, but not limited to, focal ischemia due to stroke and global ischemia due to cardiac arrest. The screening assays can also be used to identify compounds that reduce or prevent cell death in the nervous system due to traumatic injury (such as head trauma or spinal cord injury), viral infection or radiation-induced nerve cell death (for example, as a side-effect of cancer radiotherapy) or environmental toxicity (e.g. by certain halogenated hydrocarbon). The screening assays can also be used to identify cell death inhibitors which are useful to reduce or prevent cell death in a range of neurodegenerative disorders, including but not limited to Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's Disease, Parkinson's Disease, multiple sclerosis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and spinobulbar atrophy.

The screening assays of this invention can be used to identify compounds that prevent cell death in any condition which potentially results in the death of cardiac muscle. This includes myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure and cardiomyopathy. One particular application of the screening assay is to identify compounds which reduce or prevent myocardial cell death that occurs in certain viral infections of the heart.

The screening assays of the invention can be used to identify compounds which prevent cell death of retinal neurons that occurs in disorders associated with increased intraocular pressure (such as glaucoma) or retinal disorders associated with the aging process (such as age-related macular degeneration). The assays can also be used to identify compounds which treat hereditary degenerative disorders of the retina, such as retinitis pigmentosa.

The screening assays of the invention can also be used to identify cell death inhibitors that can be used to reduce or prevent premature death of cells in

the immune system, and are particularly useful in identifying inhibitors which are useful in treating immune deficiency disorders, such as acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), severe combined immune deficiency syndrome (SCIDS) and related diseases. The screening assays can also be used to identify  
5 cell death inhibitors that can be used to treat radiation-induced immune suppression.

The screening assays of the invention can also be used to identify drugs useful in organ transplantation procedures. Transplantation of human organs and tissues is a common treatment for organ failure. However, during the  
10 transplantation process, the donor organ or tissue is at risk for cell death since it is deprived of its normal blood supply prior to being implanted in the host. This ischemic state can be treated with cell death inhibitors by infusion into the donor organ or tissue, or by direct addition of the cell death inhibitors to the organ/tissue storage medium. Such cell death inhibitors can be identified using the screening  
15 assays described in this invention. Cell death inhibitors may also be used to reduce or prevent cell death in the donor organ/tissue after it has been transplanted to protect it from the effects of host immune cells which kill their targets by triggering apoptosis. The screening assays described in this invention can be used to identify cell death inhibitors useful in protecting transplanted organs from  
20 rejection. The cytoprotective effects of cell death inhibitors can also be used to prevent the death of human or animal sperm and eggs used in *in vitro* fertilization procedures. These inhibitors can be used during the harvesting process and can also be included in the storage medium. Cell death inhibitors useful for application in fertilization procedures can be identified using the screening assay  
25 methods described in this invention.

Mammalian cell lines and yeast cells are commonly used to produce large amounts of recombinant proteins (such as antibodies, enzymes or hormones) for industrial or medicinal use. The lifespan of some of these cell lines is limited due to growth conditions, the nature of the recombinant molecule being expressed  
30 (some are toxic) and other unknown factors. The lifespans of industrial cell lines



can be extended by including cell death inhibitors in the growth medium. Cell death inhibitors useful in extending the life span of cell lines can be identified using the screening assay procedures described in this invention.

5 The factors governing hair growth and loss are largely unknown. There is some evidence, however, that hair follicle regression (referred to as catagen) may be due at least partially to apoptosis. Therefore, it is possible that cell death inhibitors can be used to treat hair loss that occurs due to various conditions, including but not limited to male-pattern baldness, radiation-induced or chemotherapy-induced hair loss, and hair loss due to emotional stress. There is  
10 also evidence that apoptosis may play a role in the loss of hair color. Therefore, it is possible that cell death inhibitors can also be used in treating cases of premature graying of the hair. Cell death inhibitors useful in treating or preventing hair loss or graying of the hair can be identified using the screening assay procedures described in this invention.

15 The death of skin epithelial cells can occur after exposure to high levels of radiation, heat or chemicals. It is possible that cell death inhibitors can be used to reduce or prevent this type of skin damage. In one particular application, cell death inhibitors can be applied in an ointment to treat acute over-exposure to the sun and to prevent blistering and peeling of the skin. Cell death inhibitors useful  
20 in treating or preventing death of skin cells can be identified using the screening assay procedures described in this invention.

Another important aspect of the present invention is use of the reporter compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII in whole-cell assays using live or dead whole cells or tissue samples to screen for compounds that stimulate,  
25 either directly or indirectly, an enzyme or enzymes involved in apoptosis. Therefore, these screening assays using compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII are expected to lead to discovery of new drugs or new uses for known drugs that act as anti-cancer agents in diseases such as cancers, tumors and cell hyperplasias etc. Compounds that may be found using the screening assays and  
30 reagents described herein are useful for treatment of cancers, tumors or tissue

hyperplasias including but not limited to cancers or tumors of the brain, peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands and tissues, kidney, bladder, reproductive organs and glands, joints, bones and skin.

Another important aspect of the present invention is the use of reporter compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII in whole-cell assays using yeast and other fungi, and bacteria to screen compound libraries for anti-fungal or anti-bacterial drugs that act by inducing, either directly or indirectly, the caspase cascade or other enzymes involved in apoptosis in those cells.

Another important aspect of the invention is to use the reporter compounds having Formulae I-III, V, VII and VIII to monitor the therapeutic effects of therapeutic agents or treatments given to patients with the aim of reducing, preventing or treating maladies in which apoptotic cell death is either a cause or a result.

Another important aspect of the present invention is to use the reporter compounds having Formulae IX to screen for HIV protease inhibitors in HIV infected cells, comprising

(a) contacting the test cell with the test substance and the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the test substance either interacts with an external membrane receptor or is taken into said cell and the reporter compound is taken into the cell, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cell, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the test cell compared to a control cell which has only been contacted with the reporter compound and not with the test substance, is an indication that said test substance has an inhibiting effect on the HIV protease.

Yet another important aspect of the present invention is to use the reporter compounds having Formulae IX to diagnose HIV infection, comprising

(a) contacting a test cell from an individual suspected of having HIV infection with the reporter compound according to the invention under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the cell, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of the test cell, wherein a change in fluorescence, either of magnitude or of wavelength, within the test cell compared to a control cell which is contacted with the reporter compound, is an indication that said test cell has been infected by HIV virus and that the individual has been infected with HIV.

Applying the same procedure for the screening of HIV protease inhibitors in HIV infected cells, the reporter compounds having Formula IX of the present invention can be used to screen for adenovirus protease inhibitors in adenovirus infected cells. The reporter compounds having Formula IX of the present invention also can be used to screen for herpes simplex virus type-1 (HSV-1) protease inhibitors in HSV-1 infected cells. The reporter compounds also can be used to screen for human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) protease inhibitors in HCMV infected cells; to screen for hepatitis C virus (HCV) protease inhibitors in HCV infected cells; to screen for DPP-IV inhibitors in T-cells; as well as to screen for type-2 methionine aminopeptidase (MetAP-2) inhibitors in endothelial cells.

Additionally, using the same procedure for the diagnostics of HIV infection, the reporter compounds having Formula IX of the present invention also can be used to diagnose adenovirus, herpes simplex virus type-1, human cytomegalovirus and hepatitis C virus.

Compositions within the scope of this invention include all compositions wherein the fluorogenic or fluorescent compounds of the present invention are contained in an amount which are effective to achieve its intended purpose. While amounts may vary from assay to assay, determination of optimal ranges of effective amounts of each component is within the skill of the art. Typically, the fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate compounds may be applied to cells or cell lines from mammals, e.g. humans, or other animals by incubating the cells or tissues containing the cells with the fluorogenic or fluorescent substrate at a

concentration of about 0.01 nanomolar to about 1 molar, or an equivalent amount of a salt or proreporter molecule thereof in a physiologically compatible buffer. Such buffers include cellular growth medias, an example for leukemia derived cancer cells being RPMI-1640 with or without 10% fetal bovine serum. Other  
5 known cellular incubation buffers could involve isotonic solutions buffered with either phosphate or HEPES. One of ordinary skill in the art can identify other suitable buffers with no more than routine experimentation. The cells can be derived from any organ or organ system for which it is desirable to find--by means of the screening assays--drugs that could be useful in treating apoptosis-  
10 mediated disorders, e.g., neuronal cell death, heart disease, liver disease, retinal disorders, kidney, joint and bone diseases, immune system disorders, cancers, tumors and tissue hyperplasias etc.

Suitable solubilizers may be used for presenting the fluorogenic or fluorescent compounds of the present invention to tissues, cells or cell lines.  
15 Suitable solubilizers include aqueous solutions of the active compounds in water-soluble form, for example, water-soluble salts and alkaline solutions. In addition, suspensions of the compounds as appropriate oily suspensions may be presented to the cells or tissues. Suitable lipophilic solvents or vehicles include fatty oils, for example, sesame oil, or synthetic fatty acid esters, for example, ethyl oleate or  
20 triglycerides or polyethylene glycol-400 (the compounds are soluble in PEG-400) or dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) or another suitable solubilizer. Optionally, the suspension or solution may also contain stabilizers. Optionally, electroporation or presentation of the reporter molecules in liposomes or detergents may be used to enhance the cell permeability of the fluorogenic or fluorescent reporter molecules.

25 Typically, the cells are contacted with the reporter compounds of the invention and the test substance for about 30 minutes to about 5 hours, most preferably, about 1 hour.

The invention also relates to the pro-reporter derivatives of the compounds of the invention. Such pro-reporter derivatives include compounds which are  
30 cleaved *in situ* by endogenous enzymes to give the compounds of Formulae I-III,

V, and VII-IX. Such pro-reporter derivatives include lower alkyl esters of carboxyl-containing amino acid residues such as Asp and Glu. Especially preferred pro-reporter derivatives include the methyl esters and acetoxymethyl (AM) esters of Asp- and Glu-containing compounds.

5           The following examples demonstrate usefulness of the invention in measuring the activity of caspases and other enzymes involved in apoptosis in cells and tissues. The examples also demonstrate usefulness of the invention in drug screening assays that can be utilized to find enhancers or inhibitors of apoptosis. These examples are illustrative, but not limiting, of the method and  
10           compositions of the present invention. Other suitable modifications and adaptations of the variety of conditions and parameters normally encountered in *in vitro* assays, drug screening procedures or diagnostic procedures which are obvious to those skilled in the art are within the spirit and scope of the invention.

### EXAMPLE 1

#### *[Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110*

15           To a solution of Fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -t-butyl ester (4.9 g, 11.91 mmol) dissolved in an anhydrous 1:1 mixture of dimethylformamide and pyridine (30  
20           mL) at 0°C was added EDC (2.28 g, 11.91 mmol). The solution was stirred for 45 min, then a solution of Rhodamine 110 HCl (0.44 g, 1.19 mmol) in the same solvent (2 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 60 h and it was concentrated *in vacuo* to about 10 mL. The residue was then  
25           diluted with 100 mL of water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (2 x 50 mL) and water (2 x 50 mL). The solution was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give crude product which was purified by column chromatography (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ EtOAc 10:1), gave 0.89 g (67%) of

title compound as colorless solid, mp 156-158°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.75 (bs, 2H), 8.02 (d, *J* = 9.3 Hz, 2H), 7.80-6.70 (m, 26H), 6.12 (bs, 2H), 4.64 (bs, 2H), 4.46 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 4H), 4.22 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 2.82 (m, 4H), 1.45 (s, 18H).

5

## EXAMPLE 2

### *[Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HCl*

A chilled solution of DMF/morpholine (3 mL, 1:1) was added dropwise into a stirred solution of [Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 (150 mg, 0.13 mmol) in dimethylformamide (3 mL). The solution was stirred for 20 min and it was poured into ice water (100 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 100 mL). The organic phase was washed with water (3 x 100 mL) and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. To the solution was added 1N HCl in ether (0.39 mL) and it was concentrated to give a red solid. The red solid was collected and dissolved in methanol (1 mL), and precipitated with ether (50 mL) to give the title compound (65 mg, 77%) as red solid. m.p. 200°C (dec).

15

## EXAMPLE 3

### *[Z-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110*

20

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanine (376 mg, 1.69 mmol), EDC (258 mg, 1.35 mmol) and [Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HCl (50 mg, 0.072 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (10 mL) at 0°C was obtained 63 mg (86%) of the title compound as a solid, mp 124-126°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.85 (d, 2H), 7.90 (m, 2H), 7.60 (m, 4H), 7.32 (m, 10H), 7.10 (m, 2H), 6.68 (m, 2H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 5.10 (d, 4H), 4.90 (s, 2H), 4.18 (m, 2H), 2.82 (m, 4H), 1.42 (m, 24H).

25

**EXAMPLE 4*****(Z-Ala-Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110***

To the cooled solution (0°C) of [Z-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 (41 mg, 0.038 mmol) in methylene chloride (5 ml) was added 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (16 mL). The solution turned orange and was stirred at room temperature for 3 h. The solvent was removed and the crude product was purified by flash column chromatography (EtOAc/CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H = 20:0.5) to yield 34 mg (91%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.85 (s, 2H), 7.73 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 2H), 7.34-6.60 (m, 15 H), 5.08 (d, 4H), 4.05 (m, 2H), 2.95 (m, 4H), 1.38 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 5*****[Z-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110***

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-aspartic acid β-t-butyl ester (4.41 g, 13.63 mmol), EDC (2.61 g, 13.63 mmol) and Rhodamine 110 HCl (0.50 g, 1.36 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (40 mL) at 0°C was obtained 1.09 g (82%) of the title compound as colorless solid. mp 127-129°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.75 (bs, 2H), 8.06 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 2H), 7.68-7.56 (m, 4H), 7.40-6.60 (m, 15H), 6.12 (bs, 2H), 5.16 (s, 4H), 4.62 (bs, 2H), 2.97 (dd, J<sub>1</sub> = 17.1 Hz, J<sub>2</sub> = 3.3 Hz, 2H), 2.69 (dd, J<sub>1</sub> = 17.3 Hz, J<sub>2</sub> = 6.9Hz, 2H), 1.44 (s, 18H).

**EXAMPLE 6*****(Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HBr***

A chilled solution of 30% HBr in acetic acid (5 mL) was added dropwise into a stirred solution of [Z-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 (200 mg, 0.21 mmol)

in acetic acid (2 mL). The solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 h and it was then concentrated *in vacuo*. To the residue was added 100 mL of anhydrous ether to give a red precipitate which was isolated after centrifugation to give 118 mg (78%) of solid, mp 130°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 10.81 (s, 2H), 8.35 (bs, 6H), 8.05-6.79 (m, 10 H), 4.25 (bs, 2H), 2.96 (m, 4H).

### EXAMPLE 7

#### (*Z*-Val-Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valine (628 mg, 2.5 mmol), EDC (383 mg, 2 mmol) and (Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HBr (72 mg, 0.1 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (12 mL) at 0°C was obtained 38 mg (37 %) of the title compound, mp 169-171°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO): δ 8.70 (d, 2H), 8.04 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (m, 2H), 7.48-7.20 (m, 11H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 5.02 (bs, 4H), 4.70 (m, 2H), 3.85 (t, 2H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 2.60 (m, 2H), 2.05 (bs, 2H), 0.85 (t, 12H).

### EXAMPLE 8

#### [*Z*-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Val-L-Ala (200 mg, 0.62 mmol), EDC (110 mg, 0.57 mmol) and [Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HCl (31 mg, 0.043 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine at 0°C was obtained 45 mg (85%) of the title compound, mp 85-87°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.10 (bs, 1H), 8.90 (bs, 1H), 8.80 (d, 1H), 7.80-6.60 (m, 19H), 5.42 (bs, 2H), 5.10 (bs, 4H), 4.90 (s, 2H), 4.00 (d, 2H), 2.90 (m, 4H), 2.12 (m, 2H), 1.35 (s, 18H), 1.30 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 6H), 0.92 (m, 12H).



**EXAMPLE 9*****(Z-Val-Ala-Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110***

From [Z-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 (28 mg, 0.022 mmol) and  
5 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (30 mL) at 0°C was obtained 23  
mg (88%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.00 (s, 1H), 7.92 (bs,  
1H), 7.86 (bs, 1H), 7.70 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.21 (m, 13H), 6.70 (s, 1H), 6.68 (s, 1H),  
5.08 (d, 4H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 3.90 (m, 2H), 2.92 (m, 4H), 2.06 (m, 2H), 1.34 (d, J =  
6.4 Hz, 6H), 0.95 (m, 12H).

**EXAMPLE 10*****[Z-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2***

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Tyr-L-Val-L-Ala (339 mg, 0.70 mmol), EDC  
15 (122 mg, 0.64 mmol) and [Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 2HCl (39 mg, 0.058  
mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine at 0°C was obtained 61 mg (65%) of the  
title compound, mp 155-157°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02-6.60 (m, 28H), 5.02  
(bs, 4H), 4.92 (t, 2H), 4.80 (t, 2H), 4.38 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 3.05-2.62 (m, 8H),  
2.02 (m, 2H), 1.42 (s, 18H), 1.32 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 6H), 0.92 (m, 12H).

**EXAMPLE 11*****(Z-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2***

From [Z-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2  
25 (47 mg, 0.029 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (30 mL)  
at 0°C was obtained 36 mg (82%) of the title compound, mp 115°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02 (bs, 2H), 7.82 (bs, 2H), 7.70 (m, 2H), 7.40-6.60 (m, 22H), 5.02

- 92 -

(bs, 4H), 4.80 (m, 2H), 4.38 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 4.10 (m, 2H), 3.10-2.60 (m, 6H), 2.06 (m, 2H), 1.36 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 6H), 0.91 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 12H).

### EXAMPLE 12

#### *N*-Acetyl-Rhodamine 110

To a solution of Rhodamine 110 (500 mg, 1.36 mmol) dissolved in DMF (20 mL) at 0°C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (176 mg, 1.36 mmol), then acetic anhydride (167 mg, 1.64 mmol) was added dropwise to the above solution. The reaction solution was stirred at room temperature for 24 h, and it was then diluted with 100 mL of water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic phase was washed with water (2 x 100 mL), dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give crude product which was purified by column chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc 1:1) to give 210 mg (41%) of the title compound as colorless solid, mp 179°C (dec).  $R_f = 0.36$  (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  8.00 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 7.78-7.52 (m, 4H), 7.14 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 6.64 (d,  $J = 7.9$  Hz, 1H), 6.54-6.28 (m, 3H), 3.86 (bs, 2H), 2.15 (s, 3H).

### EXAMPLE 13

#### *N*-[Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110

From Fmoc-L-aspartic acid t-butyl ester (739 mg, 1.79 mmol), EDC (302 mg, 1.57 mmol) and *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (160 mg, 0.43 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (8 mL) at 0°C was obtained 276 mg (84%) of the title compound as colorless solid.  $R_f = 0.75$  (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  $\delta$  8.72 (bs, 1H), 8.02 (d,  $J = 6.3$  Hz, 1H), 7.80-6.68 (m, 17H), 6.12 (bs, 1H), 4.63 (bs, 1H), 4.47 (d,  $J = 5.5$  Hz, 2H), 4.22 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 14*****N-[Asp(OBu-t)]-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110***

From a chilled solution of DMF/morpholine (3 mL, 1:1) and *N*-[Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (100 mg, 0.13 mmol) was obtained the title compound (67 mg, 95%) as solid, mp 131-133°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.73 (s, 1H), 8.01 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.72 (s, 1H), 7.70-6.65 (m, 9H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 2.88 (d, J = 16.5 Hz, 1H), 2.70 (m, 1H), 2.17 (s, 3H), 1.90 (bs, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 15*****N-[Z-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110***

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanine (43 mg, 0.19 mmol), EDC (37 mg, 0.19 mmol) and *N*-Asp(OBu-t)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (30 mg, 0.055 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine at 0°C was obtained 38 mg (92%) of the title compound as a solid, mp 138-140 °C. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.42 (EtOAc/Hexane 4:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.82 (bs, 1H), 8.01 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.70-6.67 (m, 14H), 5.20 (m, 1H), 5.16 (bs, 2H), 4.90 (m, 1H), 4.20 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 2.61 (m, 1H), 2.19 (s, 3H), 1.56 (bs, 3H), 1.43 (s, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 16*****N-(Z-Ala-Asp)-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine-110***

From *N*-[Z-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (38 mg, 0.052 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (3 mL) at 0°C was obtained 34 mg (96%) of the title compound. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.6 (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops

of CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80-6.69 (m, 14H), 5.10 (bs, 2H), 2.92 (m, 2H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.37 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 3H).

### EXAMPLE 17

5

#### *N*-[*Z*-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valine (49 mg, 0.19 mmol), EDC (37 mg, 0.19 mmol) and *N*-Asp(OBu-t)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (30 mg, 0.055 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (4 mL) at 0°C was obtained 40 mg (94%) of the title compound as a solid, mp 155-157°C. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.5 (EtOAc/Hexane 4:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.87 (s, 1H), 8.01 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.64-6.66 (m, 14H), 5.32 (bs, 1H), 5.11 (d, J = 3.3 Hz, 2H), 4.92 (m, 1H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.06 (d, J = 15.6 Hz, 1H), 2.62 (m, J = 15.8 Hz, 1H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.26 (bs, 1H), 0.96 (m, 6H).

15

### EXAMPLE 18

#### *N*-(*Z*-Val-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110

From *N*-[*Z*-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (40 mg, 0.051 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (3 mL) at 0°C was obtained 37 mg (99%) of the title compound. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.6 (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.01 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.78-6.60 (m, 14H), 5.08 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 2H), 4.83 (m, 1H), 3.89 (d, J = 5.7 Hz, 1H), 3.02 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.25 (m, 1H), 0.97 (bs, 6H).

25

**EXAMPLE 19*****N-[Z-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110***

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valine-L-alanine (63 mg, 0.019 mmol), EDC (37 mg, 0.019 mmol) and *N*-Asp(OBu-t)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (30 mg, 0.052 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine at 0°C was obtained 40 mg (97%) of the title compound, mp 101-103°C.  $R_f = 0.35$  (EtOAc/Hexane 6:1).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  7.99 (d,  $J = 8.4\text{Hz}$ ), 7.80-6.62 (m, 14H), 5.42 (m, 1H), 5.11 (bs, 2H), 4.90 (m, 1H), 4.40 (bs, 1H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 3.68 (bs, 2H), 3.50 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 2H), 2.16 (bs, 3H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.26 (d,  $J = 6.3\text{ Hz}$ , 3H), 1.25 (m, 1H), 0.93 (m, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 20*****N-(Z-Val-Ala-Asp)-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110***

From *N*-[Z-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (36 mg, 0.043 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (4 mL) at 0°C was obtained 35 mg (100%) of the title compound.  $R_f = 0.4$  (10 mL EtOAc with 4 drops of  $\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ):  $\delta$  8.02 (d,  $J = 5.7\text{Hz}$ , 1H), 7.95-7.12 (m, 12H), 6.71 (s, 1H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 5.09 (bs, 2H), 4.82 (m, 1H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 3.88 (m, 1H), 3.64 (bs, 1H), 2.94 (m, 2H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.30 (d,  $J = 6.0\text{ Hz}$ , 3H), 0.95 (d,  $J = 6.9\text{ Hz}$ , 6H).

**EXAMPLE 21*****N-[Z-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2***

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-tyrosine-L-valine-L-alanine (119 mg, 0.25 mmol), EDC (47 mg, 0.25 mmol) and *N*-Asp(OBu-t)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (30 mg, 0.055 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine at 0°C was obtained 50

mg (95%) of the title compound.  $R_f = 0.5$  (EtOAc).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ):  $\delta$  8.02 (d,  $J = 7.8$  Hz, 1H), 7.82-6.58 (m, 18H), 4.90 (m, 2H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.24 (m, 1H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.37 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.29 (bs, 1H), 0.91 (m, 6H).

5

### EXAMPLE 22

#### *N*-(*Z*-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2

From *N*-[*Z*-Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2 (49 mg, 0.049 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (4 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  was obtained 42 mg (89%) of the title compound.  $R_f = 0.62$  (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops  $\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ):  $\delta$  8.00 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 1H), 7.84-6.56 (m, 18H), 4.99 (bs, 2H), 4.80 (m, 1H), 4.32 (m, 1H), 4.23 (m, 1H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 2.97 (m, 2H), 2.13 (s, 3H), 1.37 (d,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 3H), 1.23 (m, 1H), 0.90 (m, 6H).

15

### EXAMPLE 23

#### *N*-[*Z*-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5

20

From benzyloxycarbonyl-L-Asp(OBu-t)-L-Glu(OBu-t)-L-Val-L-Asp(OBu-t) (262 mg, 0.34 mmol), EDC (65 mg, 0.34 mmol) and *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 (30 mg, 0.08 mmol) in 1:1 anhydrous DMF/pyridine (4 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  was obtained 73 mg (81%) of the title compound, mp  $127-129^\circ\text{C}$ .  $R_f = 0.69$  (EtOAc/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 = 1:1$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  9.05 (s, 1H), 8.79 (d,  $J = 10.8$  Hz, 1H), 8.38 (bs, 1H), 8.01-6.65 (m, 15H), 6.10 (m, 1H), 5.14 (m, 2H), 4.92 (bs, 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 3.10-2.64 (m, 4H), 2.48 (m, 2H), 2.17 (bs, 3H), 1.40 (m, 27H), 0.99 (bs, 6H).

25

**EXAMPLE 24*****N-(Z-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-N'-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5***

From *N*-[Z-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-acetyl-  
5 Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5 (49 mg, 0.043 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid  
in methylene chloride (5 mL) at 0°C was obtained 38 mg (92%) of the title  
compound.  $R_f = 0.52$  (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops of  $\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  
( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ):  $\delta$  8.04-6.63 (m, 15H), 5.05 (m, 2H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.05  
(m, 1H), 3.93 (d,  $J = 7.9$  Hz, 1H), 3.10-2.61 (m, 4H), 2.37 (m, 2H), 2.13 (s, 3H),  
10 0.97 (m, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 25*****N*-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

15 To a solution of Rhodamine 110 (3.00 g, 8.18 mmol) dissolved in  
dimethylformamide (140 mL) at -50 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine  
(1.27 g, 1.2 mmol), then ethyl chloroformate (1.07 g, 9.81 mmol) was added  
dropwise to the above solution. The reaction solution was then slowly warmed to  
room temperature and kept stirring for 5 h. It was then diluted with 200 mL of ice  
20 water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic phase was  
washed with brine water (3 x 100 mL), dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated to  
give crude product which was purified by column chromatography (hexane /  
EtOAc 3:1) to give 1.31 g (40%) of the title compound as colorless solid.  $R_f = 0.4$   
(EtOAc/Hexane = 2:1).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  8.00 (d,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 1H), 7.65-7.50  
25 (m, 4H), 7.15 (d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 1H), 6.88-6.32 (m, 8H), 4.24(q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.92  
(bs, 2H), 1.33 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 26*****N*-[Cbz-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

From Cbz-Val-Asp(OBu-t) (197 mg, 0.47 mmol), EDC (89.53 mg, 0.47 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (47 mg, 0.12 mmol) (as described in Example 1) was obtained 47 mg (50%) of the title compound as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.04 (bs, 1H), 8.00 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.82-6.62 (m, 15H), 5.30 (bs, 1H), 5.20-5.11 (m, 2H), 4.98 (m, 1H), 4.23 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 3.74 (t, 1H), 3.15 (d, J = 16.5 Hz, 1H), 2.59 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.32 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H), 1.01 (m, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 27*****N*-(Cbz-Val-Asp)-*N'*-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

From *N*-[Z-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl Rhodamine 110 (20 mg, 0.025 mmol) in 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (2 mL) was obtained 15 mg (80%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.86-6.59 (m, 14H), 5.10 (m, 2H), 4.97 (m, 1H), 4.20 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 3.77 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 3.04 (m, 1H), 2.76 (m, 1H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 1.32 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.02 (m, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 28*****N*-[Cbz-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5**

From Cbz-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t) SEQ ID NO:5 (374 mg, 0.48 mmol), EDC (92 mg, 0.48 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (48.28 mg, 0.12 mmol) (as described in Example 1) was obtained 81 mg (58 %) of the title compound as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.02 (bs, 1H), 8.80 (d,



- 99 -

1H), 8.00-6.78 (m, 15H), 6.18-6.02 (m, 1H), 5.13 (bs, 2H), 4.94 (bs, 1H), 4.60 (bs, 1H), 4.44 (bs, 1H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 3.89 (m, 1H), 3.15-2.00 (m, 8H), 1.46-1.31 (m, 27H), 1.26 (m, 1H), 1.05-0.98 (m, 9H):

5

**EXAMPLE 29*****N*-(Cbz-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110****SEQ ID NO:5**

10

From *N*-[Z-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5 (100 mg, 0.086 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (3 mL) (as described in Example 4) was obtained 85 mg (99%) of the title compound.  $R_f = 0.5$  (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops  $\text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ ):  $\delta$  8.02-6.63 (m, 15H), 5.08-5.04 (d, 2H), 4.48-3.92 (m, 6H), 3.10-1.95 (m, 8H), 1.31 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3H), 1.05-0.96 (m, 9H).

15

**EXAMPLE 30*****N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-****Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5**

20

From Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t) SEQ ID NO:5 (307.6 mg, 0.45 mmol), EDC (86 mg, 0.45 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (60 mg, 0.15 mmol) (as described in Example 1) was obtained 128 mg (80 %) of the title compound as a solid.  $R_f = 0.35$  (EtOAc/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 = 1:1$ ).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ ):  $\delta$  9.00 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 8.80-8.54 (m, 2H), 8.05-6.90 (m, 9 H), 6.72 (s, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 4.93-4.02 (m, 6H), 3.09-2.30 (m, 6H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 2.05 (m, 25 2H), 1.48-1.30 (m, 29H), 1.06-0.96 (m, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 31*****N*-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110****SEQ ID NO:5**

5                   From                   *N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5 (90 mg, 0.084 mmol) and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (2 mL) was obtained 65 mg (86 %) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.12-7.26 (m, 9H), 7.21 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.08-7.05 (m, 1H), 6.79-6.64 (m, 2H), 4.67 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.20 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 4.07-3.52 (m, 2H), 3.07-2.68 (m, 4H), 2.38 (m, 2H), 2.13 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.94 (t, 3H), 1.32 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H), 1.04-0.95 (m, 6H).

10

**EXAMPLE 32*****N*-Octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

15                   From Rhodamine 110 (500 mg, 1.36 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (351.6 mg, 2.76 mmol), and octyl chloroformate (316 mg, 1.64 mmol) (as described in Example 25) was obtained 182 mg (28 %) of the title compound as colorless solid. *R<sub>f</sub>* = 0.7 (EtOAc/hexane = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.99 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.52 (bs, 1H), 7.15 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 6.88-6.32 (m, 6H), 4.17 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 3.9 (2H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.42-1.26 (m, 8H), 0.89 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 3H).

20

**EXAMPLE 33**

25                   ***N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-Octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5**

From Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t) SEQ ID NO:5 (123.7 mg, 0.18 mmol), EDC (34.5 mg, 0.18 mmol) and *N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine

110 (29 mg, 0.06 mmol) (as described in Example 1) was obtained 43 mg (62 %) of the title compound as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.01-8.53 (m, 3H), 8.07-7.99 (m, 1H), 7.77-6.78 (m, 9H), 6.72 (s, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 4.93 (m, 1H), 4.76-4.64 (m, 1H), 4.39 (m, 1H), 4.16 (m, 2H), 4.06 (m, 1H), 3.08-2.02 (m, 9H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 1.47-1.29 (m, 39H), 1.05-0.96 (m, 6H), 0.88 (t, J = 5.7 Hz, 3H).

### EXAMPLE 34

#### *N*-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110

SEQ ID NO:5

From *N*-[Z-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl R-110 SEQ ID NO:5 and 50% trifluoroacetic acid in methylene chloride (2 mL) was obtained 16.5 mg (100%) of the title compound. *R*<sub>f</sub> = 0.46 (10 mL EtOAc with 5 drops CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02-7.04 (m, 8H), 6.79-6.64 (m, 2H), 4.67(m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.15 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 4.15-3.94 (m, 2H), 3.10-2.10 (m, 6H), 2.01-1.94 (m, 3H), 1.69 (m, 2H), 1.29 (bs, 10H), 1.05-0.86 (m, 9H).

### EXAMPLE 35

#### *N*-Methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110

From Rhodamine 110 (600 mg, 1.64 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (254 mg, 1.96 mmol) and methyl chloroformate (201 mg, 2.13mmol) (as described in Example 25) was obtained 28 mg (4.4 %) of the title compound as colorless solid. *R*<sub>f</sub> = 0.77 (EtOAc/Hexane =3:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.10 –6.53 (m, 9H), 6.35 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 3.90 (bs, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 36*****N*-Methylsulfonyl -Rhodamine 110**

5 From Rhodamine 110 (500 mg, 1.36 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (211 mg, 1.64 mmol) and methylsulfonyl chloride (187 mg, 1.64 mmol) (as described in Example 25) was obtained 42.1 mg (9.4%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.02 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.71-7.62 (m, 3H), 7.24-6.36 (m, 7H), 3.95 (bs, 2H), 3.18 (s, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 37*****N*-Acetyl -Rhodamine 116**

15 From Rhodamine 116 (458.8 mg, 1.0 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (129.3 mg, 1.0 mmol) and acetic anhydride (122 mg, 1.2 mmol) (as described in Example 25) was obtained 141 mg (9.4%) of the title compound as colorless solid. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.64 (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 2:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.01 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.69-7.62 (m, 3H), 7.24-6.36 (m, 7H), 3.95 (bs, 2H), 3.28 (s, 3H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 1.95 (bs, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 38*****N*-Dimethylcarbamyl -Rhodamine 110**

25 From Rhodamine 110 (1.0 g, 2.73mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.42 g, 3.27 mmol) and dimethylcarbamyl chloride (0.35 g, 3.27 mmol) (as described in Example 25) was obtained 10 mg (1 %) of the title compound as solid. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.3 (EtOAc). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.00 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.80-7.64 (m, 3H), 7.55 (d, J = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 7.21-6.40 (m, 6H), 3.03 (s, 6H).

**EXAMPLE 39*****N-Hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***

From Rhodamine-110, diisopropylethylamine (0.24 mL, 2.52 mmol) and  
5 hexyl chloroformate (0.27 mL, 1.64 mmol) (as described in Example 25) was  
obtained the title compound as an orange solid (80 mg, 13%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ  
7.99 (d, J = 6.6, 1 H), 7.67-7.56 (m, 2 H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 7.5, 1H), 6.87  
(dd, J = 1.8, 8.7, 1H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 6.66 (d, J = 8.7, 1H), 6.54-6.50 (m, 2H), 6.33  
(dd, J = 2.1, 8.7, 1H), 4.17 (t, J = 6.6, 2 H), 3.92 (s, 2 H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.34 (br s,  
10 6H), 0.91 (t, J = 6.0, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 40*****N-Decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***

15 The title compound was prepared as described in Example 25. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.98 (d, J = 7.2, 1 H), 7.67-7.56 (m, 2 H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J =  
7.5, 1H), 6.89-6.87 (m, 2H), 6.66 (d, J = 8.4, 1H), 6.53-6.49 (m, 2H), 6.32 (d, J =  
8.4, 1H), 4.17 (t, J = 6.6, 2 H), 3.93(s, 2 H), 1.67 (m, 2H), 1.27 (br s, 14H), 0.89  
(t, J = 6.9, 3H).

20

**EXAMPLE 41*****N-Dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***

25 The title compound was prepared as described in Example 25. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.00 (d, J = 6.9, 1 H), 7.68-7.57 (m, 2 H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.16 (d, J =  
6.9, 1H), 6.86 (d, J = 8.4, 1H), 6.89-6.53 (m, 4H), 6.35 (d, J = 7.1, 1H), 4.17 (t, J  
= 6.3, 2 H), 3.89(s, 2 H), 1.67 (m, 2H), 1.27 (br s, 18H), 0.89 (t, J = 5.7, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 42**

***N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-hexyloxycarbonyl-  
Rhodamine-110 SEQ ID NO:5**

From Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)-OH SEQ ID NO:5  
(263 mg, 0.383 mmol), EDC (74 mg, 0.39 mmol) and *N*-hexyloxycarbonyl-  
Rhodamine-110 (44 mg, 0.096 mmol) (according to Example 1) was obtained the  
title compound as a white solid (30 mg, 28%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.99 (d, J =  
6.9, 1H), 8.78 (d, J = 11.7, 1H), 8.52 (s, 1H), 8.06-6.69 (m, 13H), 4.97-4.01 (m, 6  
H), 3.08-2.04 (m, 12H), 1.70-1.34 (m, 39H), 1.04-0.89 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 43**

***N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-decyloxycarbonyl-  
Rhodamine-110 SEQ ID NO:5**

The title compound was prepared as described in Example 1. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.01-8.76 (m, 3H), 8.51 (s, 1H), 8.02-6.69 (m, 13H), 4.97-4.01 (m, 6  
H), 3.08-2.04 (m, 12H), 1.70-1.34 (m, 47H), 1.04-0.88 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 44**

***N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-  
Rhodamine-110 SEQ ID NO:5**

The title compound was prepared as described in Example 1. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.01-8.76 (m, 3H), 8.51 (s, 1H), 8.02-6.69 (m, 13H), 4.97-4.01 (m, 6  
H), 3.08-2.04 (m, 12H), 1.70-1.34 (m, 51H), 1.04-0.88 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 45***N-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-N'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***SEQ ID NO:5**

5                   From                   *N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-  
hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110 SEQ ID NO:5 (30 mg, 0.027 mmol) and  
trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) was obtained the title compound as a yellow solid (22  
mg, 85%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.13-7.32 (m, 8H), 7.26 (d, J = 6.6, 1H), 7.12 (d,  
J = 8.7, 1H), 6.83-6.69 (m, 2H), 4.72 (m, 1H), 4.44-3.99 (m, 5H), 3.11-2.77 (m,  
10 3H), 2.43 (m, 2H), 2.17 (m, 2H), 2.03-1.98(m, 5 H), 1.73 (m, 2H), 1.49-1.34 (m,  
8H), 1.04-0.97 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 46***N-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-N'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***SEQ ID NO:5**

15                   The title compound was prepared as described in Example 45. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.13-7.32 (m, 8H), 7.26 (d, J = 7.8, 1H), 7.12 (d, J = 8.1, 1H), 6.83-  
6.69 (m, 2H), 4.72 (m, 1H), 4.44-3.99 (m, 5H), 3.11-2.77 (m, 3H), 2.45 (m, 2H),  
2.22-2.10 (m, 2H), 2.05-1.98(m, 5 H), 1.73 (m, 2H), 1.49-1.26 (m, 14H), 1.06-  
20 0.92 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 47***N-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-N'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110***SEQ ID NO:5**

25                   The title compound was prepared as described in Example 45. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.07-7.08 (m, 10H), 6.81-6.68 (m, 2H), 4.73 (m, 1H), 4.44-3.35 (m,  
5H), 3.26-2.02 (m, 12H), 1.73 (m, 2H), 1.49-1.29 (m, 18H), 1.06-0.92 (m, 9H).

**EXAMPLE 48*****N*-(Ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

5 To the solution of Rhodamine 110 (500 mg, 1.36 mmol) dissolved in dimethylformamide (12 mL) at -61 °C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (264 mg, 2.04 mmol), then ethyl chlorothiolformate (204 mg, 1.64 mmol) was added dropwise to the above solution. The reaction solution was then slowly warmed to room temperature and kept stirring for 1 h. It was then diluted with 100 mL of ice  
10 water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 30 mL). The organic phase was washed with brine (2 x 50 mL) and it was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give crude product which was purified by chromatography (Hexane / EtOAc 2:1), gave 238 mg (42%) of the title compound as a solid. *R<sub>f</sub>* = 0.6 (EtOAc/Hexane = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.01 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.68-7.57 (m, 3H), 7.21 (bs, 1H), 7.14 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 6.88 (dd, *J*<sub>1</sub> = 8.4 Hz, *J*<sub>2</sub> = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 6.68 (d, 1H),  
15 6.56-6.50 (m, 2H), 6.34 (dd, *J*<sub>1</sub> = 8.4 Hz, *J*<sub>2</sub> = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 3.91 (s, 2H), 3.00 (q, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 2H), 1.36 (t, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 49**

20 ***N*-[Ac-Asp(OBu-t)-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5**

The title compound was prepared as described in Example 1. *R<sub>f</sub>* = 0.56 (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 2:1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.04-8.46 (m, 3H), 8.01-6.68 (m, 11  
25 H), 4.93-3.86 (m, 4H), 3.15-1.85 (m, 8H), 2.14 (d, 3H), 1.48-1.33 (m, 29H), 1.06-0.98 (m, 6H).



**EXAMPLE 50*****N*-(Ac-Asp-Glu-Val-Asp)-*N'*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

SEQ ID NO:5

5           The title compound was prepared as described in Example 45. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.12-7.09 (m, 11H), 6.79-6.66 (m, 2H), 4.67-3.93 (m, 4H), 3.08-2.68 (m, 6H), 2.38 (m, 2H), 2.12 (m, 2H), 1.99-1.94 (t, 3H), 1.32 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 3H), 1.04-0.94 (m, 6H).

10

**EXAMPLE 51****2,5,8-Trioxadecyl chloroformate**

          A solution of triethylene glycol monomethyl ether (2 g, 12.2 mmol) in ether (15 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred, ice-cold solution of 20% phosgene in toluene (11.36 mL, 21.92 mmol) over 20 min. The reaction mixture was  
15           allowed to warm to rt and stirring was continued for 15 h. Evaporation of the solvent give 2.63 g (95%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 4.44 (m, 2H), 3.37 (m, 2H), 3.68-3.63 (m, 6H), 3.55 (m, 2H), 3.38 (s, 3H).

20

**EXAMPLE 52*****N*-(2,5,8-Trioxadecyloxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110**

          From Rhodamine 110 (500 mg, 1.36 mmol), *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (317 mg, 2.45 mmol) and 2,5,8-trioxadecyl chloroformate (371 mg, 1.64 mmol)  
25           was obtained 261 mg (37 %) of the title compound as solid. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.52 (EtOAc/Hexane = 4:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.00 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.66-7.58(m, 3H), 7.49 (s, 1H), 7.26 (bs, 1H), 6.88 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 6.65 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 6.54-6.31 (m, 3H), 4.33 (t, J = 4.2 Hz, 2H), 3.93 (bs, 2H), 3.74 (t, J = 3.3 Hz, 2H), 3.70-3.64 (m, 6H), 3.55 (m, 2H), 3.37 (bs, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 53*****N*-[Ac-Leu-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110****SEQ ID NO:9**

5 From Ac-Leu-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t) (189 mg, 0.3 mmol) SEQ ID NO:9, EDC (57.5 mg, 0.3 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (40 mg, 0.1 mmol) (according to Example 1) was obtained 48 mg (47 %) of the title compound as a solid.  $R_f = 0.35$  (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 1:1); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02-7.04 (m, 8H), 6.79-6.93 (m, 2H), 4.35 (m, 2H), 4.20 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 4.11  
10 (m, 1H), 3.94 (d, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.00-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.30 (bs, 2H), 2.00 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.95 (d, 3H), 1.62-1.28 (m, 25H), 1.04-0.82 (m, 12H).

**EXAMPLE 54*****N*-(Ac-Leu-Glu-Val-Asp)-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110****15 SEQ ID NO:9**

The title compound was prepared as described in Example 45. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.40-7.05 (m, 9H), 6.79-6.63 (m, 2H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 4.31 (m, 1H), 4.20 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 4.11 (m, 1H), 3.94 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.68 (m, 2H), 2.38 (m,  
20 2H), 2.08 (m, 2H), 1.99-1.95 (t, 3H), 1.68-1.48 (m, 3H), 1.31 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H), 1.04-0.80 (m, 12H).

**EXAMPLE 55*****N*-[Cbz-Gly-Pro] -N'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

25 From Cbz-Gly-Pro (91.8 mg, 0.3 mmol), EDC (57.5 mg, 0.3 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (40.2 mg, 0.1 mmol) (according to Example 1) was obtained 68 mg (98 %) of the title compound as a solid.  $R_f = 0.6$  (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 4:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.45 (s, 1H), 8.00 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H),

- 109 -

7.61-6.91(m, 8H), 6.68-6.63 (m, 2H), 5.69 (bs, 1H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.72 (d, 1H), 4.22 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 4.03 (bs, 2H), 3.58 (1H), 3.43 (m, 1H), 2.49-1.90 (m, 4H), 2.42 (bs, 1H), 2.18-1.95(m, 3H), 1.31 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H).

5

**EXAMPLE 56*****N*-(Gly-Pro)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110. HBr**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.11 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 8.00 (bs, 1H), 7.84-7.72 (m, 3H), 7.32-7.15 (m, 3H), 6.95-6.87 (m, 2H), 4.64(m, 1H), 4.23 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 3.96 (s, 2H), 3.68 (m, 2H), 2.35-2.05 (m, 4H), 1.33 (t, J = 6.9Hz, 3H).

10

**EXAMPLE 57****1-Hexyl Chlorothiolfornate**

15

A solution of 1-hexanethiol (3.72 g, 31.5 mmol) in ether (15 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred, ice-cold solution of 20% phosgene in toluene (25 mL, 47 mmol) over 20 min. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirring was continued for 15 h. Evaporation of the solvent give 6.1g (98 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 2.96 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 1.64-1.24 (m, 8H), 0.91 (t, J = 6.3 Hz, 3H).

20

**EXAMPLE 58*****N*-(Hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

25

The title compound was prepared according to Example 25. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.8 (EtOAc/Hexane = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.00 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.65-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.24 (bs, 1H), 7.14 (d, 1H), 6.87 (dd, 1H), 6.68-6.32 (m, 4H), 3.92 (bs, 2H), 2.99 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.42 (m, 2H), 1.34- 1.26 (m, 4H), 0.90 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 59*****2-Butoxyethyl Chloroformate***

From 2-butoxyethanol (3.72 g, 31.5 mmol) and 20% phosgene in toluene  
5 (25 mL, 47 mmol) was obtained 4.51 g (79%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 4.46 (t, 2H), 3.70 (m, 2H), 3.51 (t, J = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 1.56 (m, 2H), 1.40 (m, 2H), 0.94 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 60*****N-(2-Butoxyethoxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110***

The title compound was prepared according to Example 25. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.58 (EtOAc/Hexane = 1:1). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.00 (d, J = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.67-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.15 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 6.89-6.32 (m, 6H), 4.34 (m, 2H), 3.91 (bs, 2H),  
15 3.68 (m, 2H), 3.50 (t, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.59 (m, 2H), 1.39 (m, 2H), 0.93 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 61*****N-[Cbz-Asp(OEt)-Glu(OEt)-Val-Asp(OEt)]-N'-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine  
20 110 SEQ ID NO:5***

From Cbz-Asp(OEt)-Glu(OEt)-Val-Asp(OEt) SEQ ID NO:5 (181 mg, 0.3 mmol), EDC (57.5 mg, 0.3 mmol) and *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (40 mg, 0.1 mmol) (according to Example 1) was obtained 71 mg (72%) of the title  
25 compound as a solid. R<sub>f</sub> = 0.3 (EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 4:1), <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.00 (bs, 1H), 8.76 (d, 1H), 8.43 (bs, 1H), 8.14-6.90 (m, 10H), 6.80-6.62 (m, 2H), 5.1-3.8 (m, 6H), 3.2-2.0 (m, 11H), 1.35-1.22 (m, 12H), 1.12-0.84 (m, 7H).

**EXAMPLE 62*****N*-[Ac-Leu-Glu(OBu-t)-Val-Asp(OBu-t)]-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine****110 SEQ ID NO:9**

5           The title compound was prepared according to Example 1.  $R_f = 0.65$   
(EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 1:1), <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02-7.04 (m, 8H), 6.79-6.93 (m,  
2H), 6.20 (bs, 1H), 4.95 (bs, 1H), 4.52-4.20 (m, 5H), 3.15-2.00 (m, 9H), 1.68 (m,  
2H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.41-1.29 (m, 12H), 1.18-0.88 (m, 15H).

10

**EXAMPLE 63*****N*-(*Z*-Gly)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

          From *Z*-Glycine (284 mg, 1.356 mmol), EDC (260 mg, 1.356 mmol). and  
*N*-ethoxycarbonyl Rhodamine 110 (58 mg, 0.135 mmol) (according to Example  
15   1) was obtained the title compound (70 mg, 83%) as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>):  
δ 8.95 (bs, 1H), 7.98 (s, 2H), 7.53 (m, 8H), 7.30 (s, 5H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 6.63 (dd,  
2H, J=8.4, 11.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2H), 4.19 (q, 2H, J=7.5 Hz), 1.27 (t, 3H, J=7.5 Hz).

**EXAMPLE 64**

20

***N*-Gly-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 HBr**

          The title compound was prepared according to Example 6. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 9.41 (bs, 1H), 9.20 (s, 1H), 8.04 (m, 1H), 7.62 (m, 3H), 7.33 (m, 2H),  
7.12 (m, 2H), 6.97 (m, 2H), 6.74 (m, 2H), 4.25 (q, 2H, J=6.9), 1.33 (t, 3H, J=6.9  
25   Hz).

**EXAMPLE 65*****N*-(Z-Gly-Pro-Gly)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110**

From Z-Glycine-Proline (315 mg, 1.03 mmol), EDC (197 mg, 1.03 mmol) and *N*-Gly-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (50 mg, 0.103 mmol) (according to Example 1) was obtained the title compound (70 mg, 96%) as a pale yellow color solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.97 (bs, 1H), 7.94 (d, 1H, J=7.8 Hz), 7.77 (d, 1H, J=15 Hz), 7.52 (m, 4H), 7.32 (s, 5H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.15 (m, 2H), 6.64 (m, 1H), 5.92 (bs, 2H), 5.78 (bs, 1H), 5.57 (bs, 1H), 5.09 (s, 2H), 4.95 (m, 2H), 4.74 (m, 2H), 4.16 (m, 2H), 3.62 (m, 1H), 3.46 (m, 1H), 1.98 (m, 4H), 1.26 (m, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 66*****N*-(Gly-Pro-Gly)-*N'*-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 HBr**

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.02 (d, 1H, J=7.8 Hz), 7.71 (m, 3H), 7.28 (m, 2H), 7.19 (m, 1H), 7.01 (m, 1H), 6.71 (m, 2H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.19 (q, 2H, J=7.2 Hz), 4.05 (m, 2H), 3.94 (m, 2H), 3.61 (m, 2H), 2.12 (m, 4H), 1.30 (t, 3H, J=7.2 Hz).

**EXAMPLE 67*****N*-Hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl Chloride**

To a solution of 0.35 ml of (i-Pr)<sub>2</sub>NEt in 10 ml of diethyl ether at 0°C was added phosgene (1.06 ml, 1.93 M solution in toluene) and *N*-hexylmethylamine (0.31 ml, 2.05 mm). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm up to 25°C, and further stirred at 25°C for 14 h. The mixture was filtered, and the solvent was removed under vacuum. The product was used for the next step reaction without further purification. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 3.42 (m, 2H), 3.07 (s, 3H), 1.59 (m, 2H), 1.31 (m, 6H), 0.90 (m, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 68*****N*-(*N*-Hexyl-*N*-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110**

To a solution of Rhodamine 110 (0.5 g, 1.36 mmol) in DMF (15 ml) at -  
5 61°C was added *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.25 ml) and *N*-hexyl-*N*-  
methylcarbamyl chloride in DMF (2.05 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred  
at -61°C for 1 h, then was allowed to warm up to rt. The reaction mixture was  
further stirred at rt for 14 h, and then was partitioned between aqueous saturated  
10 NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution and ethyl acetate (2 x 50 ml). The organic solution was washed  
with brine (100 ml), and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed and the  
crude product was purified by flash chromatography (hexane : EtOAc, 1:1). The  
title compound (115 mg, 18%) was obtained as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.97  
(d, 1H, J=7.2 Hz), 7.59 (m, 3H), 7.12 (d, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 6.85 (dd, 1H, J=8.4, 2.1  
Hz), 6.60 (dd, 2H, J=5.1, 3.3 Hz), 6.48 (dd, 2H, J=8.4, 2.1 Hz), 6.31 (dd, 1H,  
15 J=8.4, 2.4 Hz), 3.93 (bs, 2H), 3.33 (t, 2H, J=6.9 Hz), 2.79 (s, 3H), 1.56 (m, 2H),  
1.30 (m, 6H), 0.88 (t, 3H, J=6.6 Hz).

**EXAMPLE 69****N-(Octylthio)carbonyl Rhodamine 110**

5           The title compound was prepared according to Example 25. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 7.99 (d, 1H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.59 (m, 3H), 7.11 (dd, 1H, J=6.9, 0.9 Hz), 6.89 (dd, 1H, J=8.4, 2.1 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1H, J=8.4 Hz), 6.48 (dd, 2H, J=8.4, 2.1 Hz), 6.31 (dd, 1H, J=8.4, 2.4 Hz), 3.97 (bs, 2H), 2.95 (m, 2H), 1.67 (m, 2H), 1.29 (m, 10H), 0.88 (t, 3H, J=6.6 Hz).

**EXAMPLE 70****N-[Z-Gly]-N'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110**

15           The title compound was prepared according to Example 1. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.11 (d, J = 7.5, 1H), 7.04-6.97 (m, 2H), 6.85 (s, 1H), 6.70 (dd, J = 7.5, 7.5, 2H), 5.57 (s, 1H), 5.16 (s, 1H), 5.16 (s, 2H), 4.18 (t, J = 6.6, 2H), 4.01 (d, J = 5.7, 1H), 1.68 (q, J = 6.6, 2H), 1.29 (br s, 10H), 0.89 (t, J = 6.9, 3H).

**EXAMPLE 71****N-Gly-N'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110 HBr**

20           The title compound was prepared according to Example 6. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD): δ 8.10 (d, J = 6.9, 1H), 7.93 (d, J = 2.4, 1H), 7.86-7.75 (m, 3H), 7.28-7.24 (m, 2H), 7.11 (dd, J = 2.4, 9.0, 1H), 6.85 (d, J = 9.0, 1H), 6.78 (d, J = 9.0, 1H), 4.20 (t, J = 6.6, 2H), 3.94 (s, 2H), 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.30 (br m 10H), 0.94 (t, J = 6.6, 3H).



**EXAMPLE 72*****Fluorescence and Stability of N-Acetyl-Rhodamine 110 Compared to Rhodamine 110***

5           The activities of Rhodamine 110 and *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 as fluorescent moieties for synthetic substrates were measured in a fluorometric assay. The fluorescent signal is read in a spectrofluorometer or in a fluorometric microtiter plate reader at excitation wavelength of 485 and emission 530. Using this assay, the relative fluorescent values were determined for the two fluorescent  
10           moieties.

          Fluorescence was measured using the following buffer conditions: 100 mM HEPES pH 7.5, with 10% sucrose, 1% CHAPS, 5 mM glutathione, and 1-200 nM test compound. The assay for stability was typically carried out at 37°C for 2 days.

15           The ratio of fluorescent signal was 10.2 (Rhodamine 110/*N*-acetyl Rhodamine 110) at time zero and 10.1 after two days incubation at 37°C. The results show that similar to Rhodamine 110, *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 is a stable and efficient fluorescent indicator.

20

**EXAMPLE 73*****Fluorescence of Modified Rhodamine Dye***

          Modified Rhodamine dyes were evaluated using both conventional  
25           spectrometry and spectrofluorometry. For both types of analysis the dyes were dissolved in either methanol or 50 mM Tris at final dye concentrations ranging from 10 nM to 100 µM. An absorbance spectrum from wavelengths of 200 nm to 700 nm was determined for each dye using a Beckman DU-7000 spectrophotometer. The dyes all had absorbance peaks at around 470 to 480 nm.  
30           This wavelength was chosen as the fluorescence excitation wavelength and a full

fluorescence emission spectrum was determined using a Hitachi F-2000 spectrofluorometer. For each dye, the emission peak was around 520 nm and the fluorescent output was measured under the conditions tested (see Table 1).

5

**Table 3. Fluorescence of Modified Rhodamine Dyes**

Compound	Test Conc. ( $\mu$ M)	Solvent	Peak Excitation Wavelength	Peak Emission Wavelength	Signal Amplitude
N-Octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	MeOH	470	520	850
N-Methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	0.1	Tris	470	520	254
N-Ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	Tris	485	520	3070
Rhodamine 110	0.01	Tris	490	520	284
N-Decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	MeOH	475	520	827
N-Dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	MeOH	480	520	640
N-Hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110	0.1	MeOH	465	520	109
N-(Ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	Tris	490	520	2430
N-(Hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	MeOH	490	530	650
N-(Octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	MeOH	470	520	471
N-(2-Butoxyethoxy)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	Tris	470	520	2047
N-(2,5,8-trioxadecyloxy)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110	1	Tris	485	520	2841
N-Acetyl-Rhodamine 116	1	Tris	470	530	644
N-Methylsulfonyl-Rhodamine-110	1	Tris	485	520	988

- 117 -

N-Dimethylcarbamyl-Rhodamine-110	0.1	Tris	490	520	446
N-(N-Hexyl-N-methylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine-110	1	Tris	470	520	1466

### EXAMPLE 74

#### 5                    *Uptake and Retention of Modified Rhodamine Dyes by HL-60 Cells*

HL-60 cells were placed in 5 ml of Iscove's medium (without serum or phenol-red) containing 10  $\mu$ M or 50  $\mu$ M *N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110, *N*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110, *N*-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine-110, *N*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110 or Rhodamine 110. The cells were incubated for varying times at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator, recovered by centrifugation, and washed in 50 mL of ice-cold medium. The cells were re-centrifuged and the final pellet was resuspended in 50  $\mu$ L of fresh medium. Aliquots of each cell suspension were placed in microslides and viewed on a Nikon inverted microscope with epifluorescent illumination. As shown in Figs. 1A-1F, *N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1A), *N*-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1B), and *N*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1C) stained HL-60 cells intensely and there was almost no leakage of the dye into the medium. *N*-Hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1D) stained HL-60 cells less intensely, but it was still well-retained. *N*-(Ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1E) gave moderate, but still easily detectable staining, although there was slight leakage. Rhodamine 110 (Fig. 1F) stained cells rapidly, but the dye quickly leaked out of the cells, resulting in a low intensity of cellular staining and a high degree of fluorescence in the medium containing the cells. Therefore, the modified Rhodamine dyes are superior to Rhodamine 110 since they are readily taken up by HL-60 cells and are retained within the cells for at least 30 minutes.

### EXAMPLE 75

#### Enzymetic Activity of the Substrates

The activities of *N*-(Z-VD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-(Z-VAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5, *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2, (Z-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 and (Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2 as synthetic substrates for recombinant CPP32 and ICE were measured in a fluorometric enzyme assay. Recombinant CPP32 protein and ICE protein were prepared by expressing DNA clones encoding these enzymes in an insect host cell (sf9 cells) using baculovirus as the vector. See, Webb, N.R. *et al.*, "Expression of proteins using recombinant Baculovirus," *Techniques* 2:173-188 (1990). Cleavage of the synthetic substrates by the enzyme results in a fluorescent signal which is read in a spectrofluorometer or in a fluorometric microtiter plate reader. Using this assay, the  $K_m$  and  $V_{max}$  values were determined for each substrate with either CPP32 or ICE.

CPP32 and ICE dependent substrate cleavage was measured using the following buffer conditions: 100 mM HEPES pH 7.5, with 10% sucrose, 1% CHAPS, 5 mM glutathione, and 1-100  $\mu$ M test substrate. Nonspecific enzyme cleavage was determined with the use of the specific CPP32 and ICE inhibitors consisted of an oligomer with the sequence Asp-Glu-Val-Asp or Tyr-Val-Ala-Asp, respectively, with an aldehyde group conjugated to the C-terminus. The assay for enzyme activity was typically carried out at 37°C for 60 minutes.

Table 4 lists the  $K_m$  and  $V_{max}$  values for *N*-(Z-VD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-(Z-VAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5, *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2, (Z-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 and (Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2 as substrates for CPP32 and ICE.

Table 4. Cleavage of Substrate by CPP32 and ICE

	Enzyme			
	CPP32		ICE	
	$K_m$ ( $\mu M$ )	$V_{max}$ (nmol/min)	$K_m$ ( $\mu M$ )	$V_{max}$ (nmol/min)
<i>N</i> -(Z-VD)- <i>N'</i> -Ac-Rhodamine 110	60	11	NA	
<i>N</i> -(Z-VAD)- <i>N'</i> -Ac-Rhodamine 110	NA		70	4
<i>N</i> -(Z-DEVD)- <i>N'</i> -Ac-Rhodamine 110	154	160	12	9
SEQ ID NO:5				
<i>N</i> -(Z-YVAD)- <i>N'</i> -Ac-Rhodamine 110	NA		32	96
SEQ ID NO:2				
(Z-VAD) <sub>2</sub> -Rhodamine 110	NA		21	9
(Z-YVAD) <sub>2</sub> -Rhodamine 110	NA		6	14
SEQ ID NO:2				

NA = no activity observed at 1- 100  $\mu M$  substrate, 37°C, 3 h incubation

The results shown in Table 4 show that *N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5 is an efficient substrate for both ICE and CPP32. Also shown is that *N*-(Z-VD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 is an efficient substrate for CPP32 and not for ICE and that *N*-(Z-VAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, *N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2, (Z-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 and (Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:2 are efficient substrates for ICE and not for CPP32.

### EXAMPLE 76

#### *Cleavage of Caspase-3 Substrates by Recombinant Human Caspase-3 and by Apoptotic HL-60 Cell Lysates*

The caspase substrates were assayed by recombinant caspase-3 and by lysates prepared from apoptotic HL-60 cells. The assays were carried out at 37°C

- 120 -

in 96-well plates in a 100  $\mu$ L incubation containing 30  $\mu$ L of caspase-3 preparation or cell lysate, 10  $\mu$ M or 50  $\mu$ M of the substrate, and caspase assay buffer (40 mM 1,4-piperazinebis(ethansulfonic acid) (PIPES, Aldrich Chemical Company) pH 7.2; 100 mM NaCl; 10% sucrose; 0.1% CHAPS; 1 mM EDTA; 10 mM DTT). At the end of the incubation period, the fluorescence was measured on a Bio-Tek FL500 fluorescence microplate reader using excitation and emission wavelengths of 485 and 530 nm, respectively. Two different controls were run: 1) an enzyme blank consisting of samples containing substrate, but without enzyme or cell lysate; 2) an inhibitor control, consisting of samples which contained the caspase inhibitor, Ac-DEVD-CHO (f.c., 10  $\mu$ M). Table 5 is a summary of the results obtained with these substrates.

Table 5. Cleavage of Substrate by Caspase-3 and Lysates

<i>Compound</i>	Cleavage by Caspase-3	Cleavage by Apoptotic Lysates
N-Z-VD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-R110	Poor	Poor
N-Z-DEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5	Good	Good
N-Z-EVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-R110	Fair	Fair
N-Ac-DEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5	Good	Good
N-Ac-DEVD-N'-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5	Good	Good
N-Ac-DEVD-N'-hexyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5	Good	Good
N-Ac-DEVD-N'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5	Good	Good

As shown in Fig. 2A, cleavage of the dipeptide substrate, N-Z-VD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl-R110, required extremely high concentrations of recombinant caspase-3 (a 50-fold greater amount of enzyme than needed for tri- and tetrapeptide substrates). Even with this large amount of enzyme, the signal was low. By contrast, the tripeptide substrate, N-Z-EVD-N'-Ethoxycarbonyl-R110 (Fig. 2A), and all of the tetrapeptide substrates (Figs. 2B-2L) were cleaved efficiently by caspase-3 and apoptotic lysates.

### EXAMPLE 77

#### *Staining of Apoptotic HL-60 Cells by the Caspase-3 Substrate, N-Ac-DEVD-N'-octyloxycarbonyl R110*

5           The ability of *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5 to detect caspase activation in intact cells was tested using apoptotic HL-60 and Jurkat cells. These whole-cell assays were carried out in two stages: 1) induction of apoptosis; 2) incubation with the substrate. For HL-60 cells, apoptosis was induced by treatment with 10 µg/ml vinblastine for 4 hours. Control samples were treated with DMSO. For Jurkat cells, apoptosis was induced by treatment with 500 ng/ml agonistic antiFas antibody for 2 hours. Control samples were treated with PBS. Following apoptosis induction, the cells were incubated with 50 µM *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5 in caspase assay buffer (40 mM PIPES, pH 7.4; 100 mM NaCl; 10% sucrose; 1 mM EDTA; 10 mM DTT). The cells were then transferred to a glass microslide and viewed by epifluorescent illumination on a Nikon inverted microscope. As shown in Fig. 3A, vinblastine-treated HL-60 cells were intensely stained by *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:5. DMSO-treated cells also showed some staining (Fig. 3B), although the intensity of the signal was significantly less than that of vinblastine-treated cells. HL-60 cells treated with 50 µM Ac-DEVD-CHO SEQ ID NO:5 during the assay stage (Fig. 3C) showed almost no fluorescent signal, indicating that the staining observed in vinblastine-treated cells is almost entirely due to caspase-mediated cleavage. Jurkat cells induced to undergo apoptosis by antiFas (Fig. 3D) also showed intense staining by *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:5, while control cells showed only light staining (Fig. 3F). These experiments demonstrate that *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:5 can be used to measure apoptosis in intact cells and that the signal obtained from *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 SEQ ID NO:5 is caspase-dependent.

**EXAMPLE 78*****Cleavage of the Caspase-3 Substrate, N-Ac-DEVD-N'-octyloxycarbonyl R110  
SEQ ID NO:5, by Whole Apoptotic Jurkat Cells***

5           In order to quantitate the cleavage of *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-  
R110 SEQ ID NO:5 by whole cells, an assay was performed in which the  
fluorescent signal generated from this substrate by apoptotic Jurkat cells was  
measured in a spectrofluorometric plate reader. Jurkat cells were incubated for  
varying times in 96-well plates with 500 ng/ml antiFas antibody to induce  
10       apoptosis. Control cells were incubated with PBS. At the end of the treatment  
period, the cells were harvested, centrifuged in 1.5 ml tubes and resuspended in 25  
μL of medium containing 1% FBS. 25 μL of caspase buffer containing 50 μM *N*-  
Ac-DEVD-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:5 was added, and the cells  
were incubated for one hour. At the end of the incubation period, three 5 μL  
15       aliquots from each time point were placed in 96-well plates and the fluorescence  
was measured at excitation/emission wavelength of 485/530 nm. Figure 4 shows  
that cells treated with PBS gave a small fluorescent signal which did not increase  
over the treatment times used. However, cells treated with antiFas gave a  
detectable fluorescent signal at about one hour after apoptosis induction, and the  
20       signal continued to increase up to the 2 hour timepoint, with a signal to  
background ratio of about 7. This experiment demonstrates that *N*-Ac-DEVD-*N'*-  
octyloxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:5 yields a robust signal in whole apoptotic  
cells and can therefore be used to quantitatively measure caspase-mediated  
apoptosis in a cell-based assay.

25



**EXAMPLE 79*****Cleavage of the Caspase-8 Substrate N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl R110******SEQ ID NO: 9 by Recombinant Human Caspase-3, 6, 7, and 8***

5           N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:9 was assayed by  
recombinant human caspase-3, 6, 7, and 8. The assays were carried out at 37°C in  
96-well plates in a 100 µL incubation containing recombinant human caspase, 10  
µM of N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:9, and caspase assay  
10       buffer (40 mM PIPES, pH 7.2; 100 mM NaCl; 10% sucrose; 0.1% CHAPS; 1 mM  
EDTA; 10 mM DTT). At the end of the incubation period, the fluorescence was  
determined on a Bio-Tek FL500 fluorescence microplate reader using excitation  
and emission wavelengths of 485 and 530 nm, respectively. In order to correct for  
the endogenous fluorescence of the uncleaved substrate, controls were run which  
consisted of samples containing 10 µM N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl R110  
15       SEQ ID NO:9 without enzyme ("enzyme blanks"). Additional controls included  
samples containing the caspase inhibitor Ac-DEVD-CHO SEQ ID NO:5. As  
shown in Fig. 5, caspase-6 and caspase-8 cleave N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl  
R110 SEQ ID NO:9 to give an easily measured fluorescent signal (signal to  
background ratios of about 13 for caspase-6 to about 26 for caspase-8). Caspase-3  
20       cleaved N-Ac-LEVD-N'-ethoxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:9 less efficiently,  
yielding a signal that was about 5-fold above the enzyme blank value. Caspase-7  
gave virtually no signal. These experiments show that N-Ac-LEVD-N'-  
ethoxycarbonyl R110 SEQ ID NO:9 can be cleaved by members of the caspase-8  
subfamily and that it can be used to report the activity of this type of caspase.

**EXAMPLE 80*****Cleavage of the Aminopeptidase Substrate N-G-N'-octyloxycarbonyl R110 by  
HL-60 Cell Lysates***

5           Aminopeptidases are present in many cells and sequentially remove  
unblocked amino acid residues from peptides, starting from the N-terminus.  
Peptides with blocked amino termini are not cleaved. HL-60 lysates were  
prepared by homogenizing HL-60 cells in caspase buffer, and the ability of these  
lysates to cleave N-Z-G-N'-octyloxycarbonyl R110 and N-G-N'-octyloxycarbonyl-  
10       R110 was tested in a microtiter plate assay. Figure 6 shows that HL-60 cell  
lysates readily cleaved N-G-N'-octyloxycarbonyl R110, and the size of the signal  
was dependent on the concentration of substrate. By contrast, no signal was  
generated by HL-60 cell lysates from N-Z-G-N'-octyloxycarbonyl-R110.

**EXAMPLE 81*****Use of fluorescence assay in screening for drugs that stimulate the  
caspase cascade.***

15           Drugs that stimulate the caspase cascade in the absence of Fas ligand may  
be useful, for example, as anti-cancer chemotherapeutic agents. The assay  
20       described in Example 78 may be used to screen for drugs that stimulate the  
caspase cascade by carrying out the assay under similar conditions as in Example  
78, except that a known or unknown compound with known or unknown anti-  
cancer or anti-tumor activity replaces the Fas ligand reagent.

**EXAMPLE 82**

*Use of fluorescence assay in screening for drugs that inhibit or potentiate the caspase cascade stimulated with Fas ligand or another apoptosis inducer.*

5           Drugs that inhibit the caspase cascade may be useful in treating degenerative and other diseases caused by or associated with an inadequate activation of the caspase cascade. Drugs that potentiate the action of another caspase stimulator, such as e.g. Fas ligand or an anti-cancer drug or agent, may be suitable to treat cancers or tumors caused by or associated with an inappropriate  
10           function of the caspase cascade. The assays and reagents described in this invention may be used to screen for drugs that either inhibit or potentiate the caspase cascade in cells by performing the assay as described in Example 78 using Fas ligand or any other agent that stimulates the caspase cascade or other  
15           apoptosis pathway in the presence of a test substance that inhibits or potentiates or acts synergistically with the action of the first apoptosis or caspase cascade inducer.

**EXAMPLE 83**

20           *Use of fluorescence assay in testing samples cancer cells from patients for chemosensitivity to anti-cancer drugs.*

          It is well known that the same cancer in different patients shows a great variability to treatment with anti-cancer drugs. Therefore it is very difficult to predict whether a cancer in a patient is treatable with a particular anti-cancer drug  
25           before treatment is begun. The fluorescence assays described in this invention permit chemosensitivity or drug resistance testing of cancer or tumor cells or tissue samples taken from individual cancer or tumor patients. To perform the chemosensitivity test, a fluorescence assay using a cancer cell or tissue sample taken from a patient may be conducted as described Example 78. Using this  
30           approach, different drugs with known or unknown chemotherapeutic activity can be tested for their capacity to stimulate the caspase cascade. The results from this

assay provide information that can be used to design an optimal chemotherapeutic drug treatment regimen for the patient.

#### EXAMPLE 84

##### 5 Uptake and Cleavage of the Aminopeptidase Substrate *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 by HL-60 Cells

HL-60 cells were placed in 5 ml of Iscove's medium (without serum or phenol-red) containing 10  $\mu$ M *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 or 10  $\mu$ M *N*-Z-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110. Three million HL-60 cells were incubated for 3 hours at 37 °C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator, recovered by centrifugation, and washed in 50  $\mu$ L of ice-cold medium. The cells were re-centrifuged and the final pellet was resuspended in 50  $\mu$ L of fresh medium. Aliquots of each cell suspension were placed in a microtiter 96-well plate and read on a Wallac 1420 microplate reader with excitation wavelength at 485nm, emission wavelength at 525nm. Aliquots of each cell suspension were also placed on microslides and viewed on a Nikon inverted microscope with epifluorescent illumination. As shown in table 6, only the cells incubated with 10  $\mu$ M *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 showed signal. There was no signal from the cells incubated with 10  $\mu$ M *N*-Z-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110. Similarly, only the cells incubated with *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 showed fluorescence under microscope, and no fluorescence signal was observed from the cells incubated with *N*-Z-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 (Figures 7A-B).

25 Table 6, Cleavage of *N*-G-*N'*-octyloxycarbonyl-R110 by HL-60 Cells

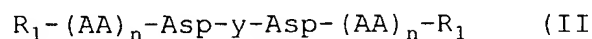
Substrate	Counts/ $\mu$ g protein
<i>N</i> -Z-G- <i>N'</i> -octyloxycarbonyl-R110	0
<i>N</i> -G- <i>N'</i> -octyloxycarbonyl-R110	12.98

- 127 -

5        Having now fully described this invention, it will be understood by those of ordinary skill in the art that the same can be performed within a wide and equivalent range of conditions, formulations and other parameters without affecting the scope of the invention or any embodiment thereof. All patents, patent applications and publications cited herein are fully incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

***What Is Claimed Is:***

1. A reporter compound having the general Formula II:



5

or a biologically acceptable salt or pro-reporter molecule thereof, wherein

$R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group;

each AA independently is a residue of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or a derivative of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid;

10

each  $n$  independently is 0-5; and

$y$  is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety.

15

2. The compound of claim 1 wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n-Asp$  is an *N*-blocked tetrapeptide which is a substrate for a caspase enzyme.

20

3. The compound of claim 2, wherein said tetrapeptide is WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26 or IETD SEQ ID NO:24.

25

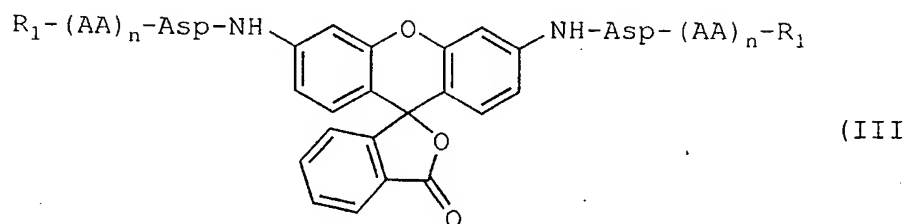
4. The compound of claim 1, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n-Asp$  is an *N*-blocked tetrapeptide which is a substrate for granzyme B.

5. The compound of claim 4, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n$ -Asp is IEPD or VEPD.

6. The compound of claim 1, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n$ -Asp is an *N*-blocked peptide consisting of C-terminal Asp and 1, 2 or 3 amino acids of a peptide chain selected from the group consisting of WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:9, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTD SEQ ID NO:14, DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:22, IETD SEQ ID NO:23, IEPD SEQ ID NO:24 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:27.

7. The compound of claim 1, wherein *y* is Rhodamine 110; and the pro-reporter molecule is a lower alkyl ester or an acetoxymethyl (AM) ester of an Asp- or Glu-containing compound.

8. The compound of claim 1, having the formula III:



9. The compound of claim 8, wherein  $R_1$  is t-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl, hexanoyl, octanoyl or benzyloxycarbonyl.

10. The compound of claim 8, wherein  $-(AA)_n$  is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET.

5 11. The compound of claim 1, which is selected from the group consisting of

(Z-YVAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2;

(Z-DEVD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;

(Z-VAD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110;

10 (Z-YVAD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2;

(Z-LE(OAM)HD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:3;

(Z-D(OAM)E(OAM)TD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:4;

(Z-D(OAM)E(OAM)VD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;

(Z-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD(OAM))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5; and

15 (Z-D(OMe)E(OMe)VD)<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110 SEQ ID NO:5.

12. A method for the preparation of a compound of claim 8, comprising

20 (a) condensing Rhodamine 110 together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give (Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110;

(b) removing the Fmoc group to give (Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110;

(c) condensing (Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub> to give (Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))<sub>2</sub>-Rhodamine 110; and

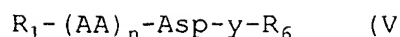
(d) removing the OBu-t protecting group.

25 13. The method of claim 12, wherein  $-(AA)_n$  is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET.

30 14. A reporter compound having the general Formula V:



- 131 -



or a biologically acceptable salt or pro-reporter molecule thereof, wherein

$R_1$  is an *N*-terminal protecting group;

5  $R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid;

each AA independently is a residue of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or a derivative of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid;

$n$  is 0-5; and

10  $y$  is a fluorogenic or fluorescent moiety.

15 15. The compound of claim 14 wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n-Asp$  is an *N*-blocked tetrapeptide which is a substrate for a caspase enzyme.

16. The compound of claim 15, wherein said tetrapeptide is WEHD  
SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID  
NO:4, DEVN SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD  
SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, SHVD SEQ ID NO:10, DELD SEQ ID  
NO:11, DGPD SEQ ID NO:12, DEPD SEQ ID NO:13, DGTN SEQ ID NO:14,  
20 DLND SEQ ID NO:15, DEED SEQ ID NO:16, DSLD SEQ ID NO:17, DVPD  
SEQ ID NO:18, DEAD SEQ ID NO:19, DSYD SEQ ID NO:20, ELPD SEQ ID  
NO:21, VEID SEQ ID NO:26 or IETD SEQ ID NO:24.

25 17. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n-Asp$  is an *N*-blocked tetrapeptide which is a substrate for granzyme B.

18. The compound of claim 17, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n-Asp$  is *N*-blocked IEPD or VEPD.

- 132 -

19. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_1-(AA)_n$ -Asp is an *N*-blocked peptide consisting of C-terminal Asp and 1, 2 or 3 amino acids of a peptide chain selected from the group consisting of WEHD SEQ ID NO:1, YVAD  
5 SEQ ID NO:2, LEHD SEQ ID NO:3, DETD SEQ ID NO:4, DEVD SEQ ID NO:5, DEHD SEQ ID NO:6, VEHD SEQ ID NO:7, LETD SEQ ID NO:8, LEHD SEQ ID NO:9, LEVD SEQ ID NO:10, SHVD SEQ ID NO:11, DELD SEQ ID NO:12, DGPD SEQ ID NO:13, DEPD SEQ ID NO:14, DGTD SEQ ID NO:15, DLND SEQ ID NO:16, DEED SEQ ID NO:17, DSLD SEQ ID NO:18, DVPD  
10 SEQ ID NO:19, DEAD SEQ ID NO:20, DSYD SEQ ID NO:21, ELPD SEQ ID NO:22, VEID SEQ ID NO:23 or IETD SEQ ID NO:24, IEPD SEQ ID NO:25 and VEPD SEQ ID NO:26.

20. The compound of claim 14, wherein y is Rhodamine 110.

21. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is  $CH_3OCO-$ , Cbz,  $Cl_3CCH_2OCO-$ ,  $PhCH_2CH_2OCO-$ , or  $CH_3(CH_2)_pOCO-$ , where p is 1-11.

22. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is  $Me_2NCO-$ ,  $Et_2NCO-$ , or *N*-Me-*N*- $CH_3(CH_2)_vNCO-$ , where v is 0-9.

23. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is Ts-,  $PhSO_2-$ ,  $MeSO_2-$ ,  $PhCH_2SO_2-$ ,  $CF_3SO_2-$  or  $CH_3(CH_2)_uSO_2-$ , where u is 0-11.

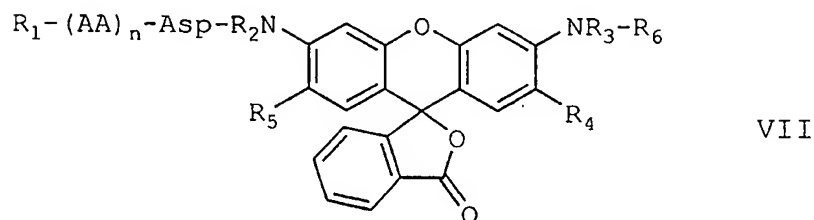
24. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is  $CH_3SCO-$ , or  $CH_3(CH_2)_tSCO-$ , where t is 0-11.

25. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is  $HCO-$ ,  $CH_3CO-$ ,  $PhCH_2CO-$ ,  $PhCO-$  or  $CH_3(CH_2)_wCO-$ , where w is 0-11.

30

26. The compound of claim 14, wherein  $R_6$  is  $\text{CH}_3(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_q\text{OCO}-$ , or  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_r(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_s\text{OCO}-$ , where  $q$  is 1-4,  $r$  is 0-5 and  $s$  is 1-4.

27. The compound of claim 14, having the formula VII:



or a biologically acceptable salt or pro-reporter molecule thereof, wherein

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  independently are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl; and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently are hydrogen or methyl.

10 28. The compound of claim 27, wherein  $R_1$  is *t*-butoxycarbonyl, acetyl, hexanoyl, octanoyl or benzyloxycarbonyl; and  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen.

15 29. The compound of claim 27, wherein  $-(AA)_n$  is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, LEV, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET.

20 30. The compound of claim 14, which is selected from the group consisting of

*N*-(Z-YVAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:2;

*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;

*N*-(Z-VD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110;

*N*-(Z-AD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110;

25 *N*-(Z-VAD)-*N'*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110;

*N*-(Z-DEVD)-*N'*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;

- 134 -

*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5;  
5 and  
*N*-(Ac-DEVD)-*N*'-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110, SEQ ID NO:5.

31. A method for the preparation of a compound of claim 27, comprising

10 (a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine;

(b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine together with *N*-fmoc-L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*t*-butyl ester to give *N*-(Fmoc-Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine;

15 (c) removing the Fmoc group to give *N*-(Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine;

(d) condensing *N*-(Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub> to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(e) removing the OBu-t protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine.

20 32. A method for the preparation of a compound of claim 27, comprising

(a) reacting Rhodamine with acetic anhydride to give *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine;

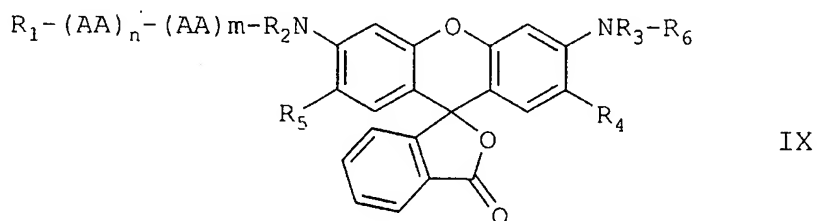
25 (b) condensing *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine with Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t) to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp(OBu-t))-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine; and

(c) removing the OBu-t protecting group to give *N*-(Z-(AA)<sub>n</sub>-Asp)-*N*'-acetyl-Rhodamine.

- 135 -

33. The method of claim 31 or 32, wherein  $-(AA)_n$  is WEH, YVA, LEH, DET, DEV, DEH, VEH, LET, LEV, SHV, DEL, DGP, DEP, DGT, DLN, DEE, DSL, DVP, DEA, DSY, ELP, VED, IEP or IET.

5 34. The compound of claim 1, having the formula IX:



or a biologically acceptable salt or pro-reporter molecule thereof, wherein

$R_1$  is a hydrogen or a *N*-terminal protecting group;

10  $R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid;

each AA independently is a residue of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid, or a derivative of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid or  $\beta$ -amino acid;

$n$  is an integer of 0-5;

15  $m$  is an integer of 0-3;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  independently are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl; and

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently are hydrogen or methyl.

20 35. The compound of claim 34, wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen.

36. The compound of claim 34, wherein  $R_1$  is H;  $n=1$ ;  $(AA)_n$  is M;  $m$  is an integer from 1-2; and  $(AA)_m$  is selected from the group consisting of GG, GA, AG, G, and A.

25

37. The compound of claim 34, wherein the compound is selected from the group consisting of

- 136 -

*N*-(GP)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
*N*-(GPG)-*N*'-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, and  
*N*-G-*N*'-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110.

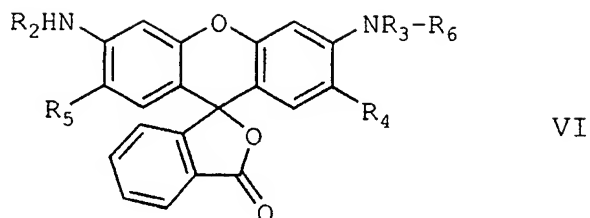
5           38.    The compound of claim 34, wherein R<sub>7</sub> is a N-terminal protecting group selected from the group consisting of t-butyloxycarbonyl, acetyl, hexanoyl, octanoyl, dodecanoyl and benzyloxycarbonyl.

10           39.    The compound of claim 34, wherein (AA)<sub>n</sub>-(AA)<sub>m</sub> is selected from the group consisting of SQNY-PIV SEQ ID NO:28, ARVL-AEA SEQ ID NO:29, ATIM-MQR SEQ ID NO:30, RQAN-FLG SEQ ID NO:31, PGNF-LQS SEQ ID NO:32, SFSF-PQI SEQ ID NO:33, TLNF-PIS SEQ ID NO:34, AETF-YVD SEQ ID NO:35 or RKVL-FLD SEQ ID NO:36; SQNY-PI SEQ ID NO:117, ARVL-AE SEQ ID NO:118, ATIM-MQ SEQ ID NO:119, RQAN-FL SEQ ID NO:120, PGNF-LQ SEQ ID NO:121, SFSF-PQ SEQ ID NO:122, TLNF-PI SEQ ID NO:123, AETF-YV SEQ ID NO:124 or RKVL-FL SEQ ID NO:125; SQNY-P SEQ ID NO:126, ARVL-A SEQ ID NO:127, ATIM-M SEQ ID NO:128, RQAN-F SEQ ID NO:129, PGNF-L SEQ ID NO:130, SFSF-P SEQ ID NO:131, TLNF-P SEQ ID NO:132, AETF-Y SEQ ID NO:133 and RKVL-F SEQ ID NO:134.

20           40.    The compound of claim 34, wherein (AA)<sub>n</sub>-(AA)<sub>m</sub> is selected from the group consisting of LRGGG SEQ ID NO:101, LRGGA SEQ ID NO:102, MRGGG SEQ ID NO:96, MRGGA SEQ ID NO:135, IRGGG SEQ ID NO:97, IRGGA SEQ ID NO:136, LVGGG SEQ ID NO:98, LVGGA SEQ ID NO:137, MVGGG SEQ ID NO:99, MVGGA SEQ ID NO:138, IVGGG SEQ ID NO:100, IVGGA SEQ ID NO:139, LRGG SEQ ID NO:55, MRGG SEQ ID NO:56, IRGG SEQ ID NO:57, LVGG SEQ ID NO:58, MVGG SEQ ID NO:59 and IVGG SEQ ID NO:60.

30           41.    A compound having the general Formula VI:

- 137 -



or a biologically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

5  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  independently are hydrogen, methyl or ethyl;

$R_4$  and  $R_5$  independently are hydrogen or methyl;

$R_6$  is a blocking group which is not an amino acid or a derivative of an amino acid.

10 42. The compound of claim 41, wherein  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen.

43. The compound of claim 41, wherein  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are methyl; and  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are hydrogen.

15 44. The compound of claim 41, wherein  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are ethyl; and  $R_4$  and  $R_5$  are methyl.

20 45. The compound of claim 41, which is selected from the group consisting of

*N*-methoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-ethoxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-hexyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

*N*-octyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110,

25 *N*-decyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110, and

- 138 -

*N*-dodecyloxycarbonyl-Rhodamine 110.

46. The compound of claim 41, which is selected from the group consisting of

5        *N*-dimethylcarbamyl-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-(*N*-methyl-*N*-hexylcarbamyl)-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-methanesulfonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-(ethylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-(hexylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
10       *N*-(octylthio)carbonyl-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 110,  
      *N*-acetyl-Rhodamine 116,  
      *N*-(2,5,8-trioxadecyloxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110 and  
      *N*-(2-butoxyethoxycarbonyl)-Rhodamine 110.

15       47. A method for detecting an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in one or more cells, comprising

      (a) contacting said one or more cells with the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is  
20       taken into said one or more cells, and

      (b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more cells,  
      wherein a change in fluorescence within said one or more cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is an indication of the presence of the enzyme.

25       48. The method of claim 47, wherein said enzyme is an intracellular caspase.

      49. A method for measuring the activity of an enzyme involved in the  
30       apoptosis cascade in one or more cells, comprising



- 139 -

(a) contacting said one or more cells with the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into said one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more cells,  
5 wherein the relative change in fluorescence within said one or more cells compared to control cells which have not be so contacted is a measure of the activity of the enzyme.

10 50. The method of claim 49, wherein said enzyme is an intracellular caspase.

51. A method for determining whether a test substance has an effect on an enzyme involved in the apoptosis cascade in one or more test cells, comprising

15 (a) contacting said one or more test cells with said test substance and the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said test substance either interacts with an external receptor or is taken into said one or more cells and said reporter compound is taken into said one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more test cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with said reporter compound,  
20 wherein a change in fluorescence within said one or more test cells compared to said control cells is an indication that said test substance has an effect on said enzyme.

25 52. The method of claim 51, wherein said enzyme is an intracellular caspase.

53. The method according to claim 51, wherein said one or more test cells is contacted with said test substance prior to contacting said test cells with said reporter compound.

30

54. The method according to claim 51, wherein said one or more test cells is contacted with said test substance after contacting with said reporter compound.

5 55. The method according to claim 51, wherein said one or more test cells is contacted substantially simultaneously with said test substance and said reporter compound.

56. The method according to claim 51, wherein said method is to  
10 determine whether said test substance stimulates the activity of said enzyme.

57. The method according to claim 51, wherein said method is to determine whether said test substance inhibits the activity of said enzyme.

15 58. The method according to claim 51, wherein said contacting step further includes contacting said one or more test cells with at least one second test substance in the presence of said first test substance.

59. The method according to claim 51, wherein said one or more test  
20 cells are derived from a single-cell organism.

60. The method according to claim 51, wherein said one or more test cells is derived from a multi-cellular organism.

25 61. The method according to claim 60, wherein said multi-cellular organism is selected from the group consists of a mammal, an invertebrate animal, an insect and a plant.

62. The method according to claim 51, wherein the one or more test  
30 and control cells are derived from the group consisting of the hair, brain,

5 peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, breast, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands and tissues, kidney, bladder, reproductive organs or glands, joint, bone and skin of said multicellular organism.

63. The method according to claim 51, wherein the one or more test cells are cancerous.

10 64. The method according to claim 63, wherein said one or more cancerous test cells are derived from the group consisting of the brain, peripheral nervous system, eye, ear, nose, mouth, tonsils, teeth, esophagus, lung, breast, heart, blood, blood vessels, bone marrow, lymph nodes, thymus, spleen, immune system, liver, stomach, intestinal tract, pancreas, endocrine glands or tissues,  
15 kidney, bladder, reproductive organs or glands, joints, bones and skin of said multi-cellular organism.

65. The method according to claim 63, wherein said one or more cancerous test cells are derived from a human in need of treatment with a  
20 chemotherapeutic drug and said test substance is a chemotherapeutic agent.

66. The method according to claim 51, wherein the test substance is a chemotherapeutic agent.

25 67. The method according to claim 51, wherein the test substance is a mixture of chemotherapeutic agents.

68. A method to determine the sensitivity of an animal with cancer to treatment with one or more chemotherapeutic agents, comprising

- 142 -

(a) contacting cancer cells taken from said animal with said one or more chemotherapeutic agents and the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said one or more agents, either interacts with an external receptor or is taken into said cancer cells, and

5 (b) recording the fluorescence of said cancer cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with said reporter compound, wherein a change in fluorescence of said cancer cells compared to said control cells is an indication that said cancer cells are chemosensitive to said one or more chemotherapeutic agents and that said animal is sensitive to said treatment.

10

69. The method of claim 68, wherein said animal is a human.

70. A method for monitoring the treatment of an animal to treatment with one or more chemotherapeutic agents, comprising

15 (a) administering said one or more chemotherapeutic agents to said animal,

(b) contacting cells taken from said animal after said administering with the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into said cells, and

20 (c) recording the fluorescence of said cells contacted with said reporter compound compared to control cells which have been taken from said animal before said administering,

wherein a change in fluorescence of said cells taken from said animal compared to said control cells is an indication that said animal is sensitive to said  
25 chemotherapeutic agents.

71. The method according to claim 70, wherein said animal suffers from a malady related to apoptotic cell death.

- 143 -

72. A method for determining whether a test substance inhibits or prevents cell death in one or more test cells, comprising

(a) contacting said one or more test cells with said test substance and the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into said one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more test cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with said reporter compound, wherein a decrease in fluorescence within said one or more test cells compared to said control cells is an indication that said test substance inhibits or prevents cell death.

73. The method of claim 72, wherein said one or more test cells are nerve cells.

74. The method of claim 72, wherein said one or more test cells are selected from the group consisting of myocardial cells, immune cells, cells of an organ to be transplanted, spermatozoa, egg, cell lines which produces a recombinant protein, hair cells, skin cells and nerve cells.

75. A method for determining whether a test substance causes or enhances cell death in one or more test cells, comprising

(a) contacting said one or more test cells with said test substance and the reporter compound according to claim 1 or 14 under conditions whereby said reporter compound are taken into said one or more cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more test cells compared to control cells which has only been contacted with said reporter compound, wherein an increase of fluorescence within said one or more test cells compared to said control cells is an indication that said test substance causes or enhances cell death.

76. The method of claim 75, wherein said one or more test cells are cancer cells, yeast, fungi or bacteria.

5 77. A method for detecting a viral protease in one or more cells, comprising

- (a) contacting said cells with the reporter compound of claim 34 under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into the cells, and
  - (b) recording the fluorescence of said cells,
- 10 wherein a change in fluorescence within the cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is an indication of the presence of the viral protease.

78. A method for measuring the activity of a viral protease in one or more viral infected cells, comprising

- (a) contacting said one or more viral infected cells with the reporter compound of claim 34 under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into said one or more viral infected cells, and
  - (b) recording the fluorescence of said one or more cells,
- 15 wherein a change in fluorescence within said one or more viral infected cells compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is a measure of the activity of the viral protease.
- 20

79. A method for determining whether a test substance has an effect on the activity of viral protease in one or more viral infected cells, comprising

- (a) contacting said viral infected test cells with said test substance and the reporter compound of claim 34 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into said infected test cells, and
  - (b) recording the fluorescence of said infected test cells compared to infected control cells which have only been contacted with said reporter compound,
- 25

wherein a change in fluorescence within said infected test cells compared to said infected control cells is an indication that said test substance has an effect, on the viral protease.

5           80.    The method of any one of claims 77-79, wherein said cells are HIV infected cells and the viral protease is HIV protease.

          81.    The method of any one of claims 77-79, wherein said cells are adenovirus infected cells and the viral protease is adenovirus protease.

10

          82.    The method of any one of claims 77-79, wherein said cells are HSV infected cells and the viral protease is HSV protease.

          83.    The method of any one of claims 77-79, wherein said cells are HCMV infected cells and the viral protease is HCMV protease.

15

          84.    The method of any one of claims 77-79, wherein said cells are HCV infected cells and the viral protease is HCV protease.

20           85.    A method for measuring the activity of protease or peptidase in cells, comprising

          (a)    contacting the test cells with the reporter compound of claim 34 under conditions whereby the reporter compound is taken into said test cells, or the reporter compound is interacting with an external membrane protease or peptidase of said cells, and

25

          (b)    recording the fluorescence of said cells, wherein a change in fluorescence within said test cell compared to control cells which have not been so contacted is a measure of the activity of the said protease or peptidase.

30

- 146 -

86. A method for determining whether a test substance has an effect on the activity of protease or peptidase in the test cells, comprising

(a) contacting said test cells with said test substance and the reporter compound of claim 34 under conditions whereby said reporter compound is taken into said test cells, or the reporter compound is interacting with an external membrane protease or peptidase of said cells, and

(b) recording the fluorescence of said test cells compared to control cells which have only been contacted with said reporter compound, wherein a change in fluorescence within the test cells compared to said control cells is an indication that said test substance has an effect on the said protease or peptidase.

87. The method of any one of claims 85-86, wherein said cells are endothelial cells and the peptidase is type 2 methionine aminopeptidase.

88. The method of any one of claims 85-86, wherein said cells are T cells and the peptidase is dipeptidyl peptidase-IV.

89. The method of any one of claims 85-86, wherein said cells are neuron cells and the protease is calpain.

90. The method of any one of claims 85-86, wherein said peptidase is aminopeptidase.



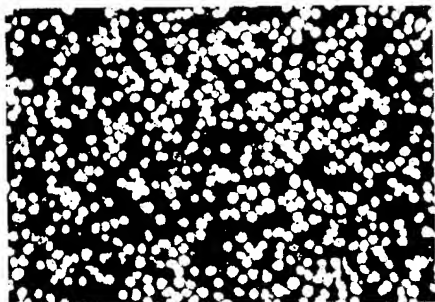


FIG. 1A

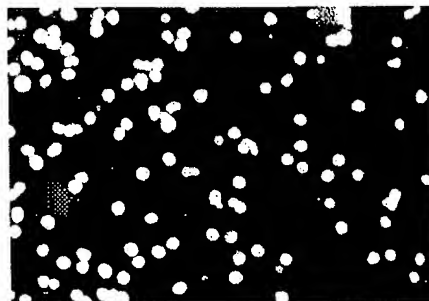


FIG. 1B

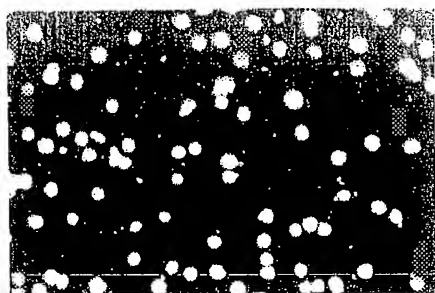


FIG. 1C

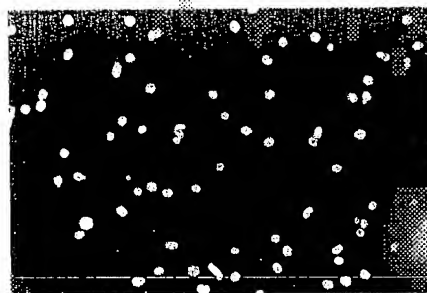


FIG. 1D

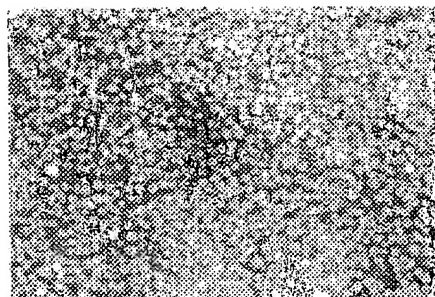


FIG. 1E



FIG. 1F

2/12

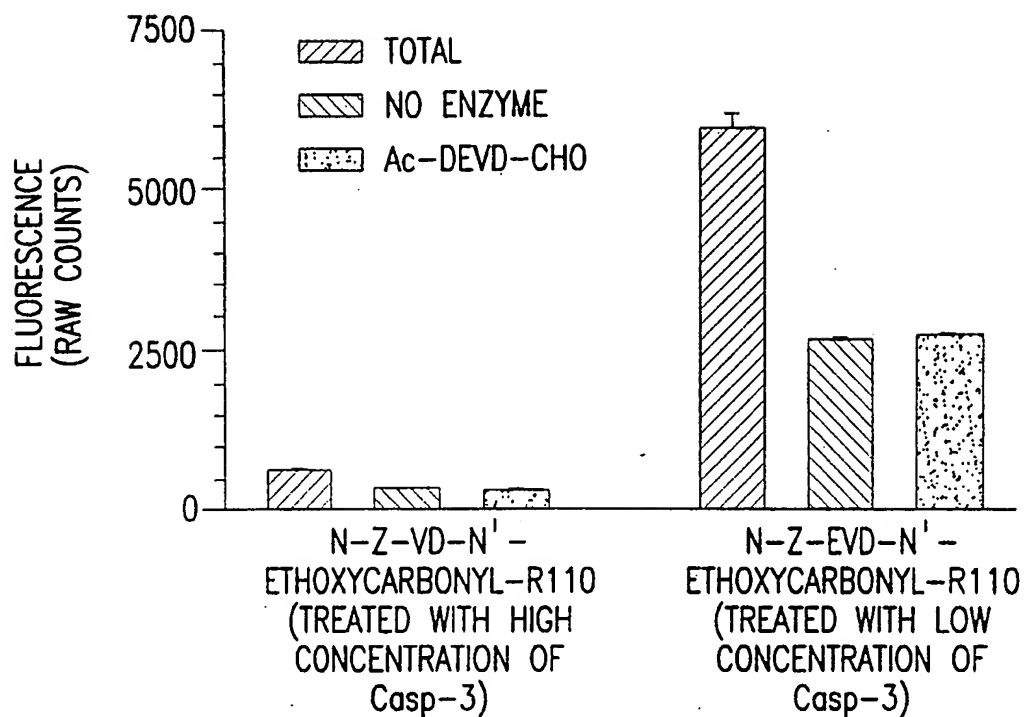


FIG.2A

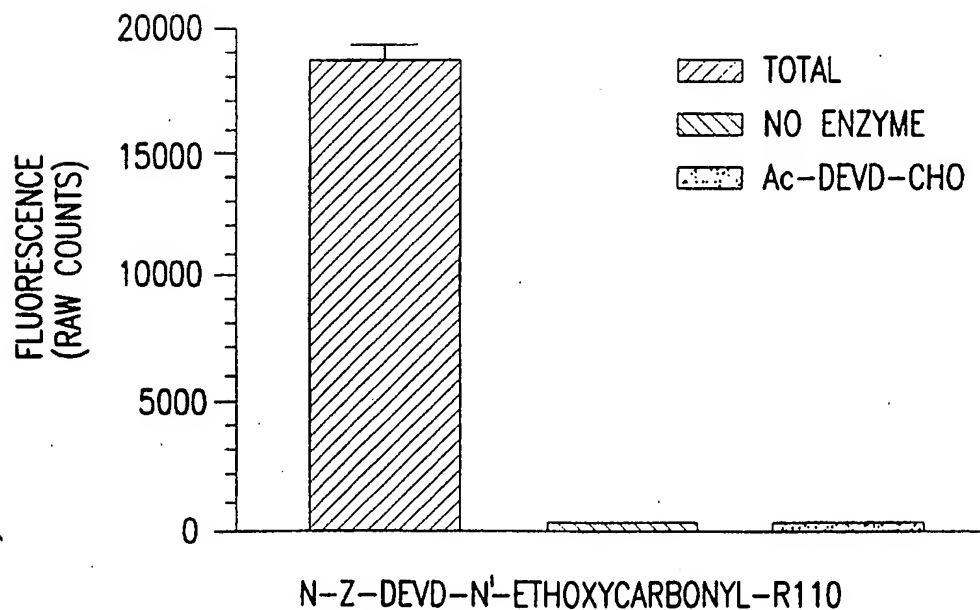


FIG.2B

3/12

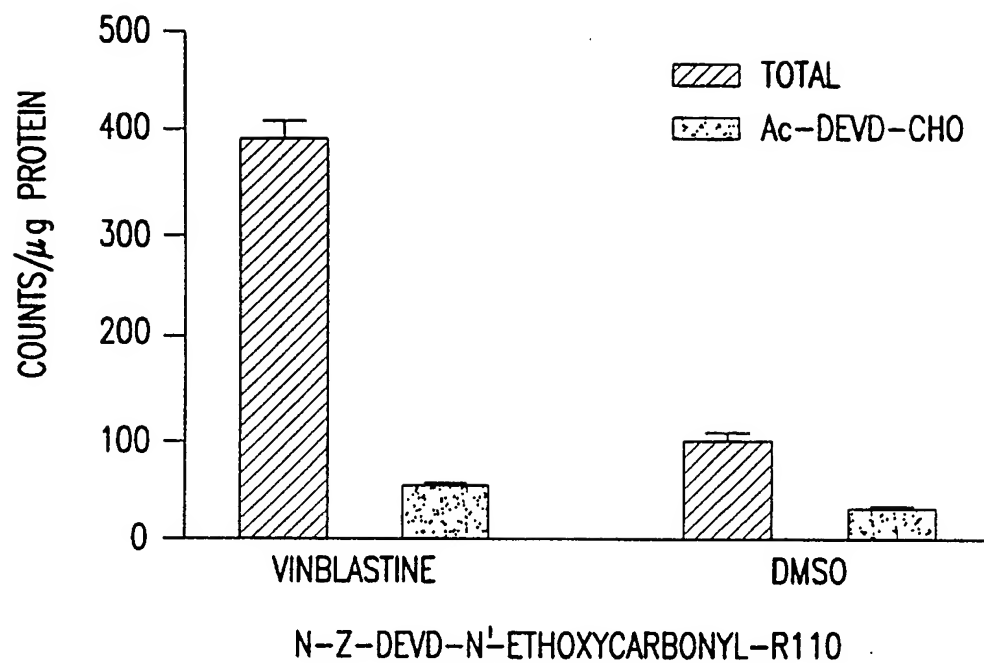


FIG.2C

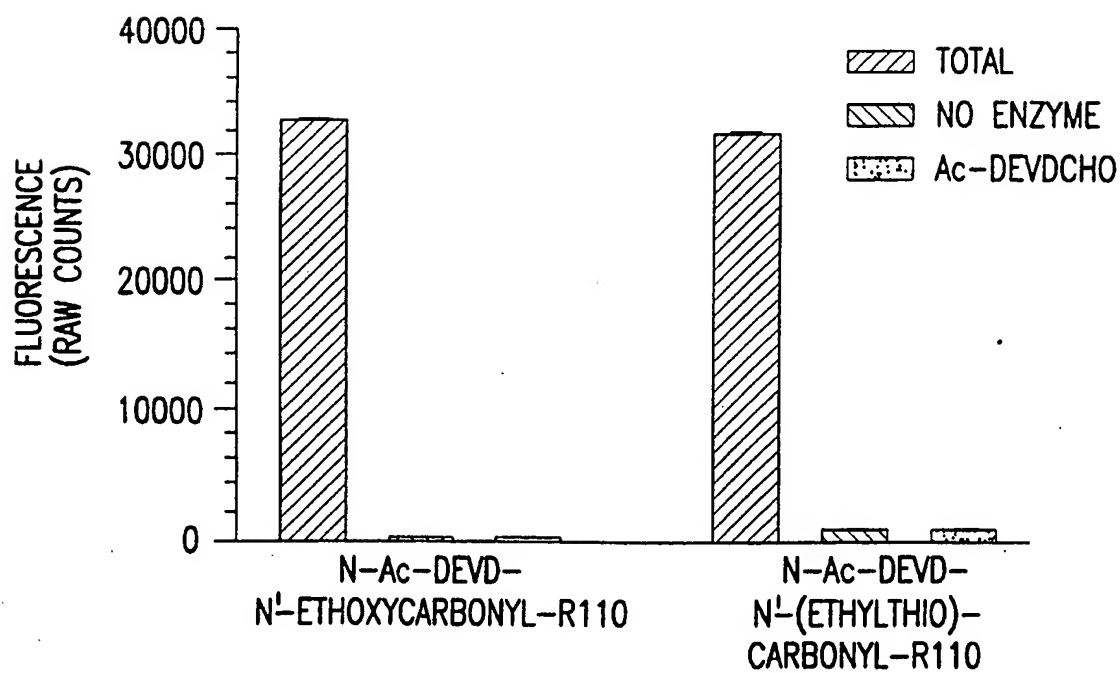


FIG.2D

4/12

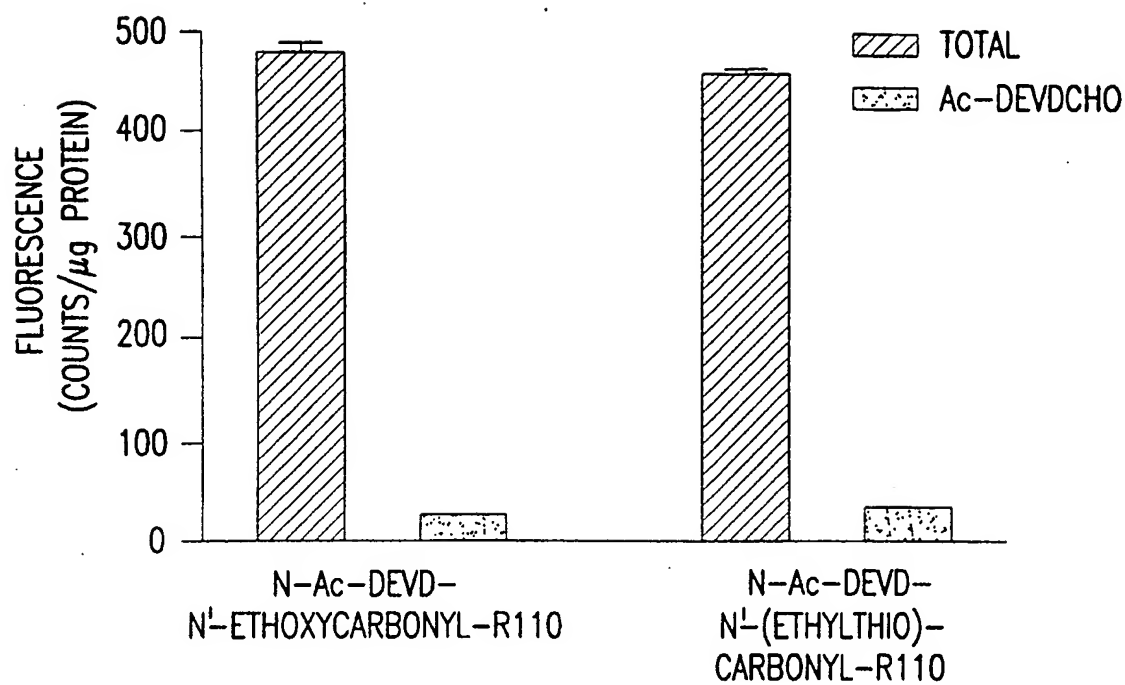


FIG. 2E

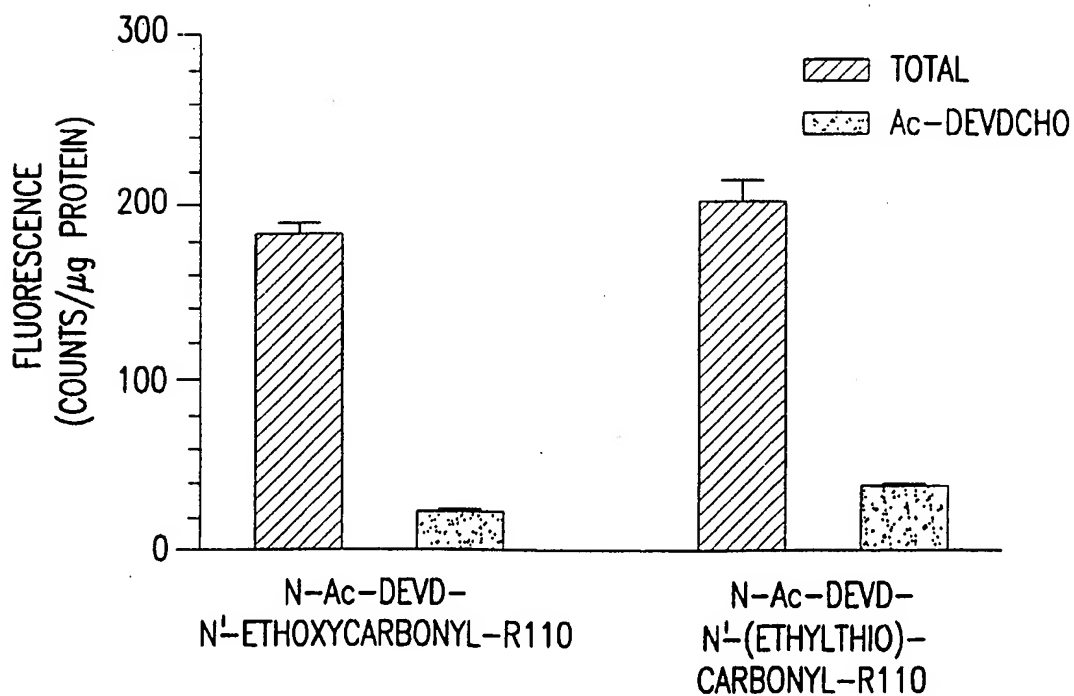


FIG. 2F

5/12

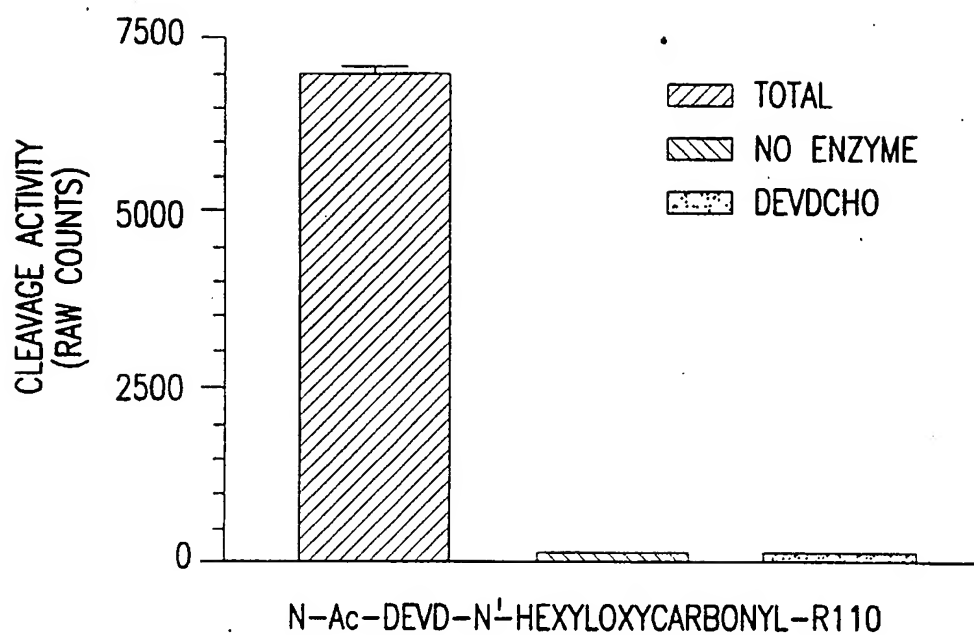


FIG.2G

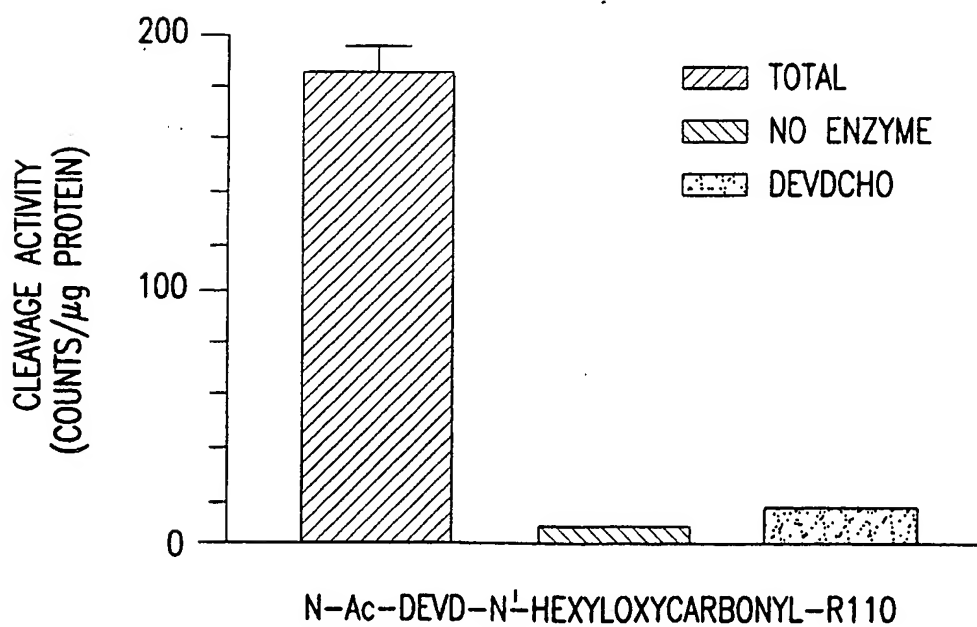


FIG.2H

6/12

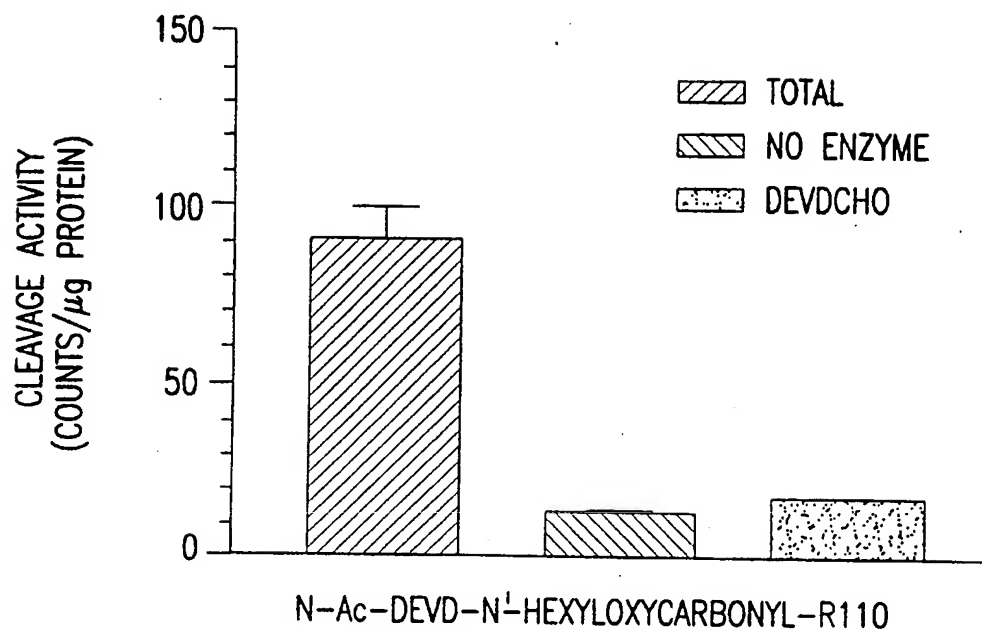


FIG.2I

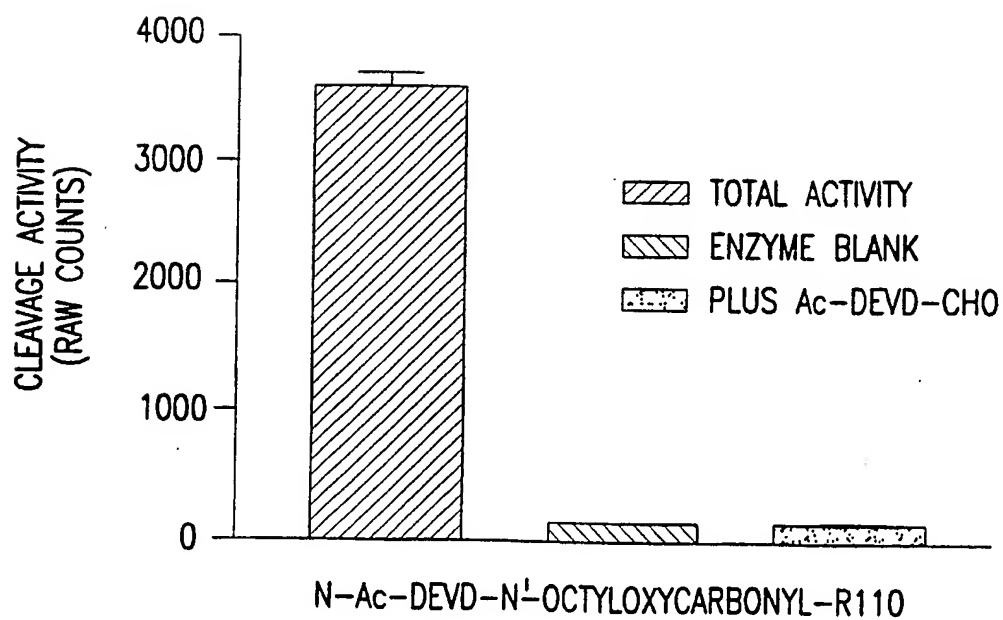


FIG.2J

7/12

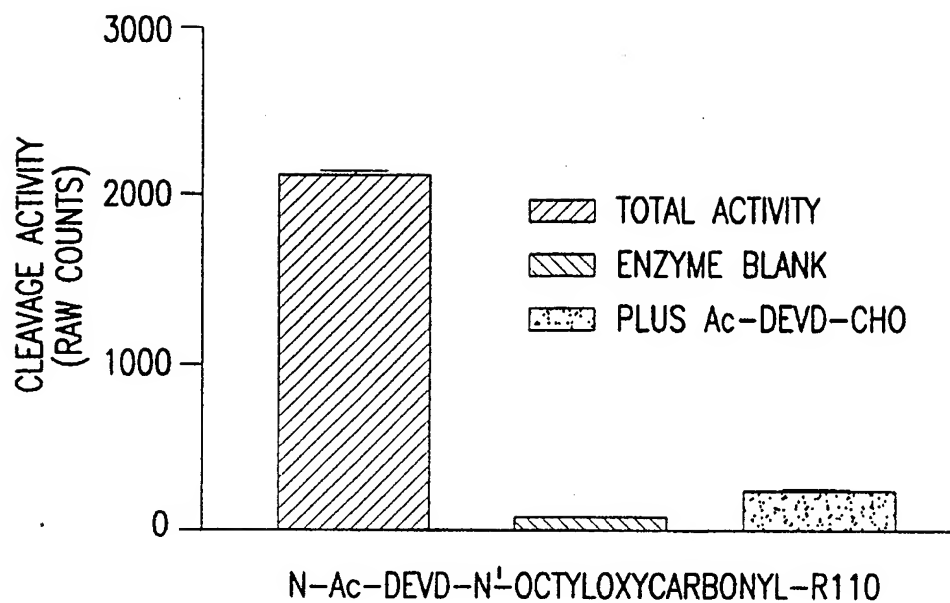


FIG.2K

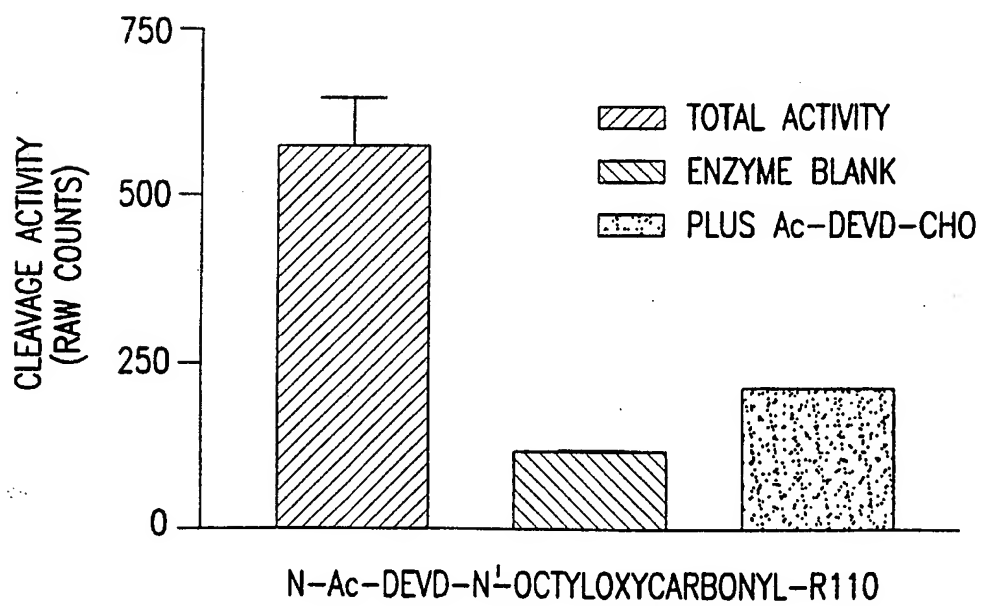


FIG.2L

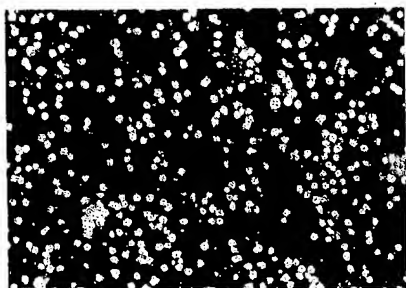


FIG.3A

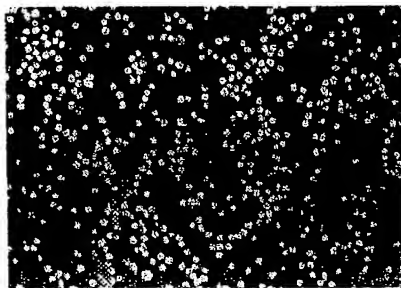


FIG.3B



FIG.3C

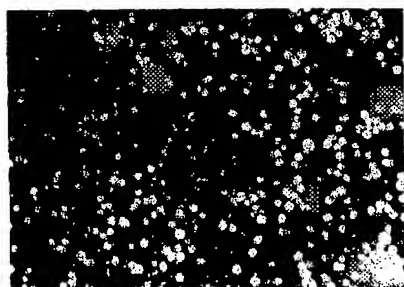


FIG.3D

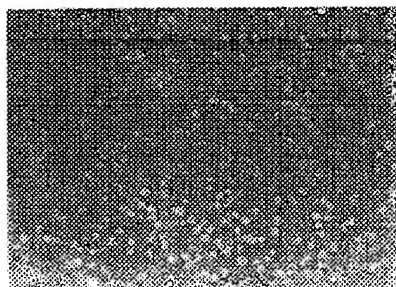


FIG.3E



9/12

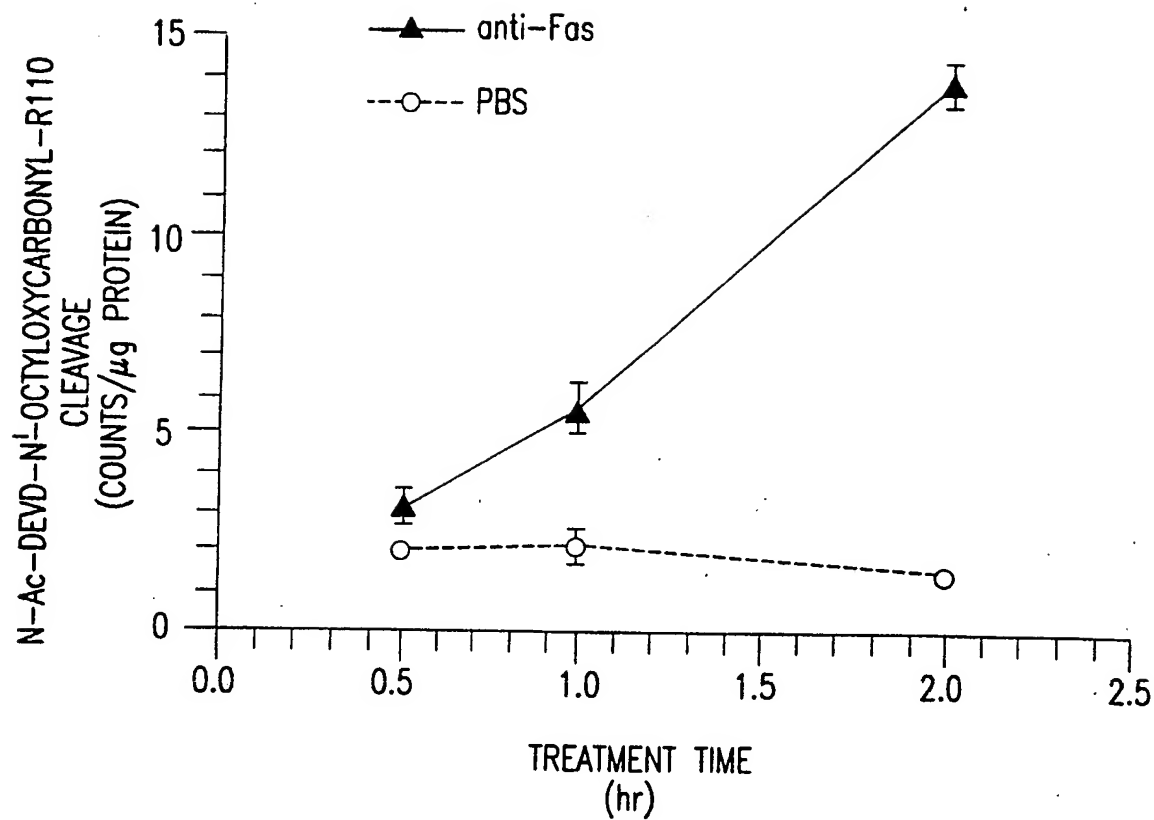


FIG.4

10/12

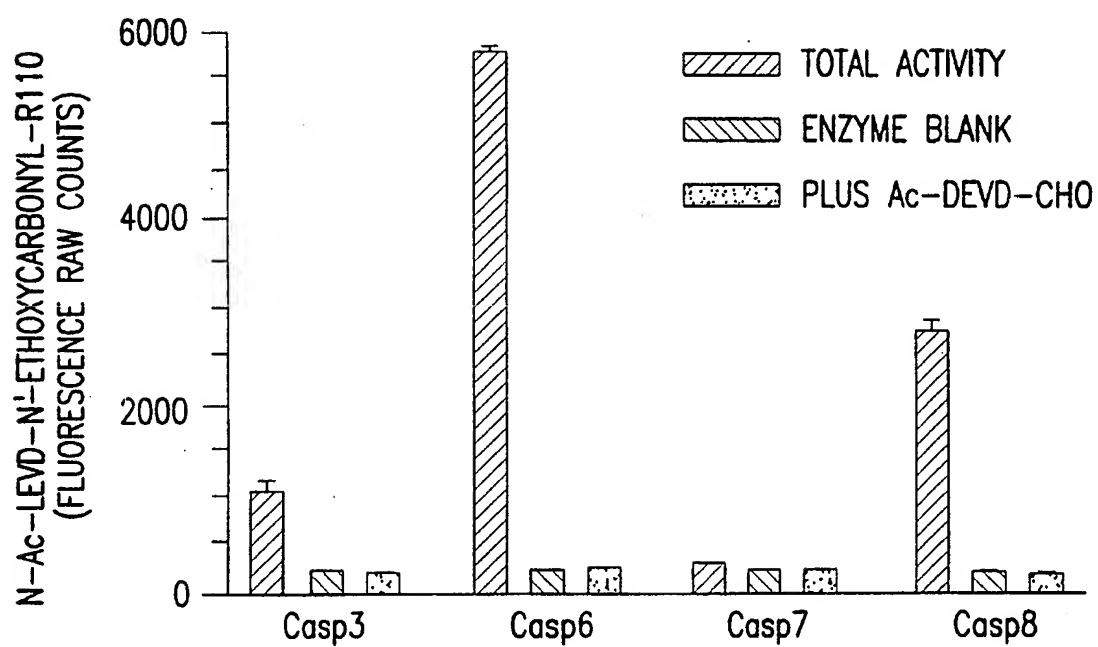


FIG.5

11/12

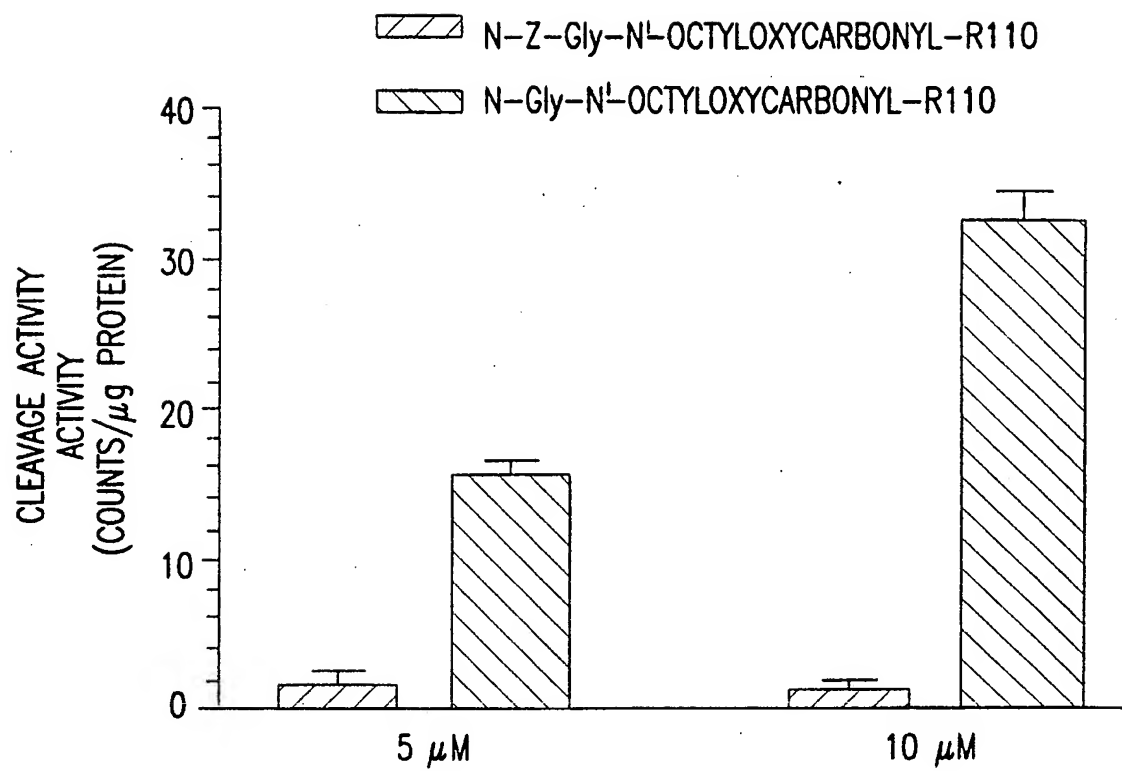


FIG.6

12/12

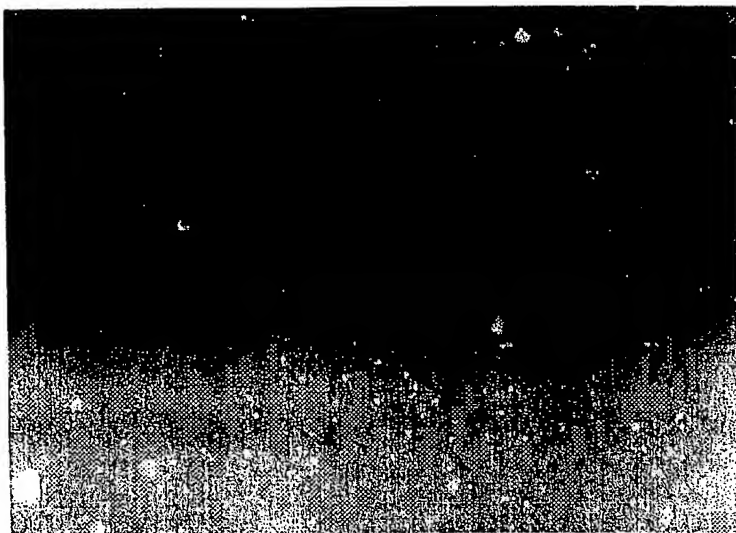


FIG. 7A

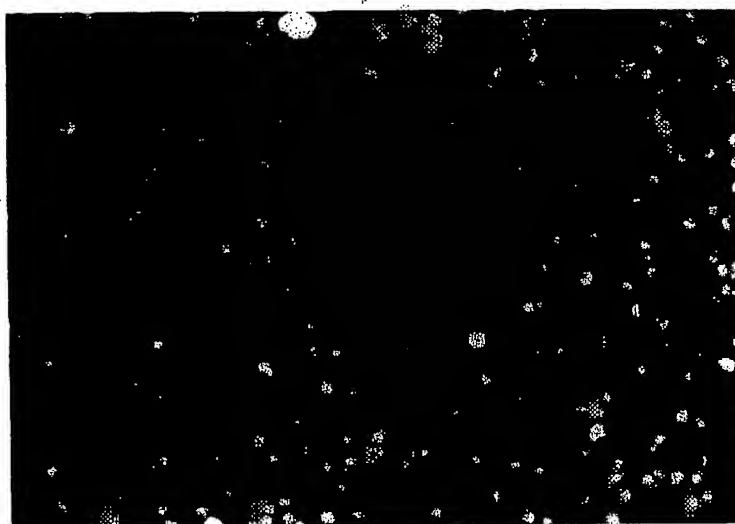


FIG. 7B

-1-

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Cytovia, Inc.

<120> Novel Fluorogenic or Fluorescent Reporter Molecules and  
Their Applications for Whole-Cell Fluorescence  
Screening Assays for Caspases and Other Enzymes and the  
Use Thereof

<130> 1735.029PC02

<140>

<141>

<150> US 60/061,582

<151> 1997-10-10

<150> US 09/033,661

<151> 1998-03-03

<160> 142

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.0

<210> 1

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 1

Trp Glu His Asp

1

<210> 2

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-2-

&lt;400&gt; 2

Tyr Val Ala Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 3

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 3

Leu Glu His Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 4

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 4

Asp Glu Thr Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 5

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 5

Asp Glu Val Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 6

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

-3-

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 6

Asp Glu His Asp

1

<210> 7

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 7

Val Glu His Asp

1

<210> 8

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 8

Leu Glu Thr Asp

1

<210> 9

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 9

Leu Glu Val Asp

-4-

1

&lt;210&gt; 10

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 10

Ser His Val Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 11

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 11

Asp Glu Leu Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 12

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;400&gt; 12

Asp Gly Pro Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 13

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence



-5-

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 13

Asp Glu Pro Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 14

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 14

Asp Gly Thr Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 15

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 15

Asp Leu Asn Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 16

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 16

Asp Glu Glu Asp

1

-6-

<210> 17  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 17  
Asp Ser Leu Asp  
1

<210> 18  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 18  
Asp Val Pro Asp  
1

<210> 19  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 19  
Asp Glu Ala Asp  
1

<210> 20  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

-7-

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 20  
Asp Ser Tyr Asp  
1

<210> 21  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 21  
Glu Leu Pro Asp  
1

<210> 22  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 22  
Val Glu Asp Asp  
1

<210> 23  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 23  
Ile Glu Pro Asp  
1

-8-

<210> 24  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide  
  
<400> 24  
Ile Glu Thr Asp  
1

<210> 25  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<221> UNSURE  
<222> (1)  
<223> Amino Acid may be Tryptophan or Leucine  
  
<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide  
  
<400> 25  
Xaa Glu His Asp  
1

<210> 26  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide  
  
<400> 26  
Val Glu Ile Asp  
1

<210> 27  
<211> 4

-9-

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 27

Val Glu Pro Asp

1

&lt;210&gt; 28

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 28

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Pro Ile Val

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 29

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 29

Ala Arg Val Leu Ala Glu Ala

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 30

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 30

Ala Thr Ile Met Met Gln Arg

1

5

-10-

<210> 31  
<211> 7  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 31  
Arg Gln Ala Asn Phe Leu Gly  
1 5

<210> 32  
<211> 7  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 32  
Pro Gly Asn Phe Leu Gln Ser  
1 5

<210> 33  
<211> 7  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 33  
Ser Phe Ser Phe Pro Gln Ile  
1 5

<210> 34  
<211> 7  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-11-

&lt;400&gt; 34

Thr Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 35

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 35

Ala Glu Thr Phe Tyr Val Asp

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 36

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 36

Arg Lys Val Leu Phe Leu Asp

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 37

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 37

Arg Gly Phe Pro

1

&lt;210&gt; 38

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

-12-

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 38

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Pro Val Val

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 39

&lt;211&gt; 14

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 39

Asp Arg Val Tyr Ile His Pro Phe His Leu Leu Glu Glu Ser

1

5

10

&lt;210&gt; 40

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 40

Leu Glu Glu Ser

1

&lt;210&gt; 41

&lt;211&gt; 8

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 41

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Pro Ile Val Gln

1

5



-13-

<210> 42  
<211> 8  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 42  
Ser Gln Asn Leu Phe Leu Asp Gly  
1 5

<210> 43  
<211> 8  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 43  
Arg Lys Ile Leu Phe Leu Asp Gly  
1 5

<210> 44  
<211> 9  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 44  
Lys Ala Arg Val Leu Phe Glu Ala Met  
1 5

<210> 45  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic

-14-

## Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 45

Ser Gln Asn Tyr

1

&lt;210&gt; 46

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 46

Pro Ile Val Gln

1

&lt;210&gt; 47

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 47

Lys Ala Arg Val Leu

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 48

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 48

Ala Arg Val Leu

1

&lt;210&gt; 49

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

-15-

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 49

Phe Glu Ala Met

1

&lt;210&gt; 50

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 50

Pro Phe His Leu

1

&lt;210&gt; 51

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 51

Gln Asn Leu Phe

1

&lt;210&gt; 52

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 52

Arg Lys Ile Leu Phe

1

5

-16-

&lt;210&gt; 53.

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 53

Lys Ile Leu Phe

1

&lt;210&gt; 54

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 54

Ser Leu Asn Phe

1

&lt;210&gt; 55

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 55

Leu Arg Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 56

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-17-

&lt;400&gt; 56

Met Arg Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 57

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 57

Ile Arg Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 58

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 58

Leu Val Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 59

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 59

Met Val Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 60

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

-18-

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 60

Ile Val Gly Gly

1

&lt;210&gt; 61

&lt;211&gt; 8

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 61

Leu Val Leu Ala Ser Ser Ser Phe

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 62

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 62

Leu Val Leu Ala

1

&lt;210&gt; 63

&lt;211&gt; 11

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 63

Arg Gly Val Val Asn Ala Ser Ser Arg Leu Ala

1

5

10

&lt;210&gt; 64

-19-

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 64

Val Val Asn Ala

1

&lt;210&gt; 65

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; SITE

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(2)

&lt;223&gt; t-butylglycine

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 65

Gly Gly Asn Ala

1

&lt;210&gt; 66

&lt;211&gt; 10

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 66

Asp Asp Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met Ser Tyr

1

5

10

&lt;210&gt; 67

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic

-20-

## Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 67

Asp Asp Ile Val Pro Cys

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 68

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 68

Asp Ile Val Pro Cys

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 69

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 69

Ile Val Pro Cys

1

&lt;210&gt; 70

&lt;211&gt; 4

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 70

Ser Met Ser Tyr

1

&lt;210&gt; 71

&lt;211&gt; 5



-21-

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 71

Trp Glu His Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 72

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 72

Tyr Val Ala Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 73

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 73

Leu Glu His Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 74

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-22-

&lt;400&gt; 74

Leu Glu Val Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 75

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 75

Asp Glu Thr Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 76

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 76

Asp Glu Val Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 77

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 77

Leu Glu Thr Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 78

&lt;211&gt; 5

-23-

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 78

Asp Glu His Asp Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 79

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 79

Trp Glu His Asp Gly Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 80

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 80

Ser Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile Val  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 81

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 81

Ser Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile  
1 5

-24-

<210> 82  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 82  
Ser Leu Asn Phe Pro  
1 5

<210> 83  
<211> 6  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 83  
Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile Val  
1 5

<210> 84  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 84  
Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile  
1 5

<210> 85  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-25-

&lt;400&gt; 85

Leu Asn Phe Pro

1

&lt;210&gt; 86

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 86

Arg Gln Ala Asn Phe Leu

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 87

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 87

Arg Gln Ala Asn Phe

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 88

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 88

Arg Lys Val Leu Phe Leu

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 89

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

-26-

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 89

Arg Lys Val Leu Phe  
1 5

<210> 90

<211> 7

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 90

Ala Arg Val Leu Phe Leu Gly  
1 5

<210> 91

<211> 6

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 91

Ala Arg Val Leu Phe Leu  
1 5

<210> 92

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 92

Ala Arg Val Leu Phe  
1 5

<210> 93

<211> 7

-27-

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 93

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Phe Leu Gly  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 94

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 94

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Phe Leu  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 95

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 95

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Phe  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 96

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 96

-28-

Met Arg Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 97  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 97  
Ile Arg Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 98  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 98  
Leu Val Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 99  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 99  
Met Val Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 100  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>



-29-

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 100

Ile Val Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 101

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 101

Leu Arg Gly Gly Gly  
1 5

<210> 102

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 102

Leu Arg Gly Gly Ala  
1 5

<210> 103

<211> 7

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 103

Leu Val Leu Ala Ser Ser Ser  
1 5

-30-

&lt;210&gt; 104

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 104

Leu Val Leu Ala Ser Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 105

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 105

Leu Val Leu Ala Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 106

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 106

Val Val Asn Ala Ser Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 107

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 107

-31-

Val Val Asn Ala Ser  
1 5

<210> 108  
<211> 6  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> SITE  
<222> (1)..(2)  
<223> t-butylglycine

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 108  
Gly Gly Asn Ala Ser Ser  
1 5

<210> 109  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> SITE  
<222> (1)..(2)  
<223> t-butylglycine

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 109  
Gly Gly Asn Ala Ser  
1 5

<210> 110  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> SITE

-32-

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(2)

&lt;223&gt; t-butylglycine

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 110

Gly Gly Asn Ala

1

&lt;210&gt; 111

&lt;211&gt; 10

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 111

Asp Asp Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met Ser Thr

1

5

10

&lt;210&gt; 112

&lt;211&gt; 9

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 112

Asp Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met Ser Thr

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 113

&lt;211&gt; 8

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;223&gt; Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 113

Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met Ser Thr

-33-

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 114

&lt;211&gt; 7

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 114

Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 115

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 115

Ile Val Pro Cys Ser Met

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 116

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 116

Ile Val Pro Cys Ser

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 117

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

-34-

&lt;400&gt; 117

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Pro Ile

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 118

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 118

Ala Arg Val Leu Ala Glu

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 119

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 119

Ala Thr Ile Met Met Gln

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 120

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 120

Arg Gln Ala Asn Phe Leu

1 5

&lt;210&gt; 121

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

-35-

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 121

Pro Gly Asn Phe Leu Gln  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 122

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 122

Ser Phe Ser Phe Pro Gln  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 123

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 123

Thr Leu Asn Phe Pro Ile  
1 5

&lt;210&gt; 124

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 124

Ala Glu Thr Phe Tyr Val  
1 5

-36-

&lt;210&gt; 125

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 125

Arg Lys Val Leu Phe Leu

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 126

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 126

Ser Gln Asn Tyr Pro

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 127

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 127

Ala Arg Val Leu Ala

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 128

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 128



-37-

Ala Thr Ile Met Met  
1 5

<210> 129  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 129  
Arg Gln Ala Asn Phe  
1 5

<210> 130  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 130  
Pro Gly Asn Phe Leu  
1 5

<210> 131  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 131  
Ser Phe Ser Phe Pro  
1 5

<210> 132  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

-38-

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 132

Thr Leu Asn Phe Pro  
1 5

<210> 133

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 133

Ala Glu Thr Phe Tyr  
1 5

<210> 134

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 134

Arg Lys Val Leu Phe  
1 5

<210> 135

<211> 5

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 135

Met Arg Gly Gly Ala  
1 5

<210> 136

-39-

<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 136  
Ile Arg Gly Gly Ala  
1 5

<210> 137  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 137  
Leu Val Gly Gly Ala  
1 5

<210> 138  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 138  
Met Val Gly Gly Ala  
1 5

<210> 139  
<211> 5  
<212> PRT  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

<400> 139  
Ile Val Gly Gly Ala

-40-

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 140

&lt;211&gt; 5

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 140

Ser Gln Asn Leu Phe

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 141

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 141

Thr Ile Asn Phe Gln Arg

1

5

&lt;210&gt; 142

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:Synthetic  
Peptide

&lt;400&gt; 142

Tyr Val Ala Asp Gly Gly

1

5

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/21231

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : A61B 8/00; C12Q 1/00, 1/70; G01N 33/48, 33/574; C12P 17/06

US CL : 424/9.6; 435/4, 5, 7.23, 125; 436/64

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/9.6; 435/4, 5, 7.23, 125; 436/64

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

Please See Extra Sheet.

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X ---- Y	US 4,557,862 A (MANGEL ET AL) 10 December 1985, see entire document, particularly Abstract and columns 13 and 14, claims 1-3.	1-11,14,17-20,27-30, 34-36, 38-43 ----- 22,37, 44-46, 68-71,75- 76,86
Y	HAUGLAND, R.P. Handbook of Fluorescent Probes and Research Chemicals. Eugene, OR, USA. Molecular Probes, Inc. 1996, page 28, structure C-6157, and page 54, structure O-6010 and E-333.	22,37,44-46,86



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*A* document member of the same patent family
*O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
*P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search

12 JANUARY 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

01 FEB 1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

Timothy A. Worrall, Ph.D.

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/21231

## C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 5,587,490 A (GOODRICH, JR. ET AL) 24 December 1996, see Abstract and column 27, Compound #20.	75-76
Y	US 5,556,992 A (GABOURY ET AL) 17 September 1996, see entire document, especially Abstract.	68-71

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/21231

### B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Electronic data bases consulted (Name of data base and where practicable terms used):

APS, STN-CAS(registry, biosis)

search terms: fluorescein, rhodamine, fluorescein deriv?, rhodamine deriv?, fluorescein conjugat?, rhodamine conjugat?, cancer, chemother?, apoptos?, cell suicide, cell death

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification 5 :</b> C07K 7/34, 7/10, A61K 37/02 A61K 37/28	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> WO 91/11457 <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 8 August 1991 (08.08.91)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US91/00500 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 24 January 1991 (24.01.91)  <b>(30) Priority data:</b> 468,736 24 January 1990 (24.01.90) US  <b>(60) Parent Application or Grant</b> <b>(63) Related by Continuation</b> US 468,736 (CIP) Filed on 24 January 1990 (24.01.90)  <b>(71)(72) Applicants and Inventors:</b> BUCKLEY, Douglas, I. [US/US]; 215 Brookwood Road, Woodside, CA 94062 (US). HABENER, Joel, F. [US/US]; 217 Plymouth Road, Newton Highlands, MA 02161 (US). MALLORY, Joanne, B. [US/US]; 243 Acalanes, Apt. 9, Sunnyvale, CA 94086 (US). MOJSOV, Svetlana [YU/YU]; 504 East 63rd Street, New York, NY 10021 (US).		<b>(74) Agents:</b> MURASHIGE, Kate, H. et al.; Irell & Manella, 545 Middlefield Road, Suite 200, Menlo Park, CA 94025 (US).  <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AT (European patent), BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent), DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FR (European patent), GB (European patent), GR (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), US.  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i>
<b>(54) Title:</b> GLP-1 ANALOGS USEFUL FOR DIABETES TREATMENT  <b>(57) Abstract</b> <p>The invention provides effective analogs of the active GLP-1 peptides, 7-34, 7-35, 7-36, and 7-37, which have improved characteristics for treatment of diabetes Type II. These analogs have amino acid substitutions at positions 7-10 and/or are truncated at the C-terminus and/or contain various other amino acid substitutions in the basic peptide. The analogs may either have an enhanced capacity to stimulate insulin production as compared to glucagon or may exhibit enhanced stability in plasma as compared to GLP-1 (7-37) or both. Either of these properties will enhance the potency of the analog as a therapeutic. Analogs having D-amino acid substitutions in the 7 and 8 positions and/or N-alkylated or N-acylated amino acids in the 7 position are particularly resistant to degradation <i>in vivo</i>.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	ES	Spain	MG	Madagascar
AU	Australia	FI	Finland	ML	Mali
BB	Barbados	FR	France	MN	Mongolia
BE	Belgium	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BF	Burkina Faso	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BG	Bulgaria	GN	Guinea	NL	Netherlands
BJ	Benin	GR	Greece	NO	Norway
BR	Brazil	HU	Hungary	PL	Poland
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	RO	Romania
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KR	Republic of Korea	SN	Senegal
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SU	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	US	United States of America
DK	Denmark				

-1-

5                   GLP-1 ANALOGS USEFUL FOR DIABETES TREATMENT

          This is a continuation-in-part of U.S.  
Application Serial No. 468,736, filed 24 January 1990.

10           Technical Field

          The invention relates to the field of improved  
pharmaceutical compositions. Specifically, the invention  
concerns analogs of the glucagon-like peptide I fragment  
7-36 or 7-37 with improved pharmacological properties.

15

Background Art

          Glucose metabolism is regulated by a number of  
peptide hormones, including insulin, glucagon, and  
gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP). The complex mechanism  
20   by which these peptide hormones regulate this metabolism  
and the manner in which they affect each other is at  
least partially elucidated. For example, glucagon binds  
to receptors on the surface of the pancreatic beta cells  
which produce insulin, and stimulates insulin secretion.  
25   Glucagon-like peptide I has been suggested to stimulate  
insulin secretion but this has not been confirmed.

          Several of these hormones originate from a mam-  
malian glucagon precursor "proglucagon" which is a 180  
amino acid peptide. Proteolysis and processing of this  
30   peptide results in a number of these protein hormones;  
the results of the processing depend on the origin of the  
cells in which this occurs. For example, in the pig and  
rat pancreas, proglucagon is processed to form glucagon  
and glicentin-related pancreatic peptide, a large peptide  
35

-2-

which contains both GLP-1 and GLP-2 sequences. In porcine small intestine, the secreted products are the 69 amino acid glucagon-containing peptide glicentin and the two glucagon-like sequences, GLP-1 and GLP-2 as separate peptides.

In any event, however, the overall sequence of proglucagon contains the 29 amino acid sequence of glucagon, the 36 or 37 amino acid sequence of GLP-1 and the 34 amino acid sequence of GLP-2, separated by amino acid spacer sequences.

Early attempts to assign a pattern of activity to GLP-1 gave ambiguous results, and it was subsequently concluded that truncated forms of this peptide are biologically active. Mojsov, S., et al. J Clin Invest (1987) 79:616-619 disclose that only the 31 amino acid peptide GLP-1 (7-37) strongly stimulates the release of insulin from pancreas; although both the truncated and full length 37 amino acid form had earlier been found in pancreas and intestine. It has been demonstrated that GLP-1 (7-36), possibly with the carboxy terminus amidated, is also a potent mediator of insulin release. (See, e.g., Holst, J.J., et al. FEBS Letters (1987) 211:169-174).

The invention described below concerns analogs of these truncated forms of GLP-1, which have desirable combinations of characteristics as they relate to potency in potentiating glucose-induced insulin secretion and glucose-induced inhibition of glucagon secretion and to circulating half-life. The physiological effects of the truncated forms in potentiating glucose-induced insulin secretion have been shown as described above by Holst, J.J., et al. and Mojsov, S., et al. (supra). The activity of the truncated hormones in inhibiting glucagon release has been shown by Orskov, C., et al. Endocrinol

-3-

(1988) 123:2009-2013; Suzuki, S., et al. Diabetes Research: Clinical Practice (1988) 5(Supp. 1):S30. The circulating half-life of these truncated forms is short--approximately four minutes as shown by Kreyman et al. The Lancet (December 5, 1987) 1300-1303. The modified forms of these truncated GLP-1 peptides provide the opportunity to optimize these properties.

There is some literature relating to the study of degradation of peptide hormones in the liver and in plasma and the half-life of such hormones in vivo generally. An early paper by McDonald, J.K. et al., J Biol Chem (1969) 244:6199-6208 showed that a dipeptidase was responsible for the degradation of glucagon in rat liver. Studies on the growth hormone releasing factor, a member of the general glucagon, GLP-1, GLP-2 family, was shown to be rapidly degraded in plasma in vitro and also in vivo by a dipeptidase, (Frohman, L.A. et al., J Clin Invest (1986) 78:906-913). Murphy, W.A. et al., in Peptide Research (1988) 1:36-41, showed that some but not all alkylated growth hormone releasing factor peptides had higher potency in vivo. In particular, for example, the triisopropylated GRF-29 was found to be 106 times more active than GRF-29 itself. On the other hand, GRF-29 which was in methylated at the N-terminus was only 40% as potent as the parent. It was also shown that substitution of D-Ala position 2 of this hormone enhanced its potency. It was, of course, not certain to what effect on properties the enhancement of potency could be attributed.

Others have attempted some modifications of GLP-1 (7-37). It has been shown that deletion of the histidine residue at position 7 greatly diminishes the activity of the hormone (Suzuki, S., et al. (supra); Hendrick, G.K., et al. Abstract: Endocrine Society

-4-

Meeting, New Orleans, LA (1988)). There have been conflicting reports concerning the effect of one or more C-terminal deletions (Suzuki, S., et al. (supra); Yanaihara, C., et al. Abstract for A Glucagon and Related Peptides Satellite Symposium, 8th International Congress of Endocrinology, July 15-16, 1988, Osaka, Japan). However, there is an extensive literature with regard to modifications of other members of this peptide hormone family, such as GIP, glucagon releasing factor (GRF), secretin and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP).

#### Disclosure of the Invention

The invention provides modified forms of the GLP-1 (7-34); (7-35); (7-36) or (7-37) human peptide or the C-terminal amidated forms thereof. The native peptides have the amino acid sequence:

	7	10	15	20	25														
	H	A	E	G	T	F	T	S	D	V	S	S	Y	L	E	G	Q	A	A
20		30		37															
	K	E	F	I	A	W	L	V	K	(G)	(R)	(G)							

wherein (G), (R), and (G) are present or absent depending on indicated chain length. The modified forms contain one or more alterations of the native structure and are of improved ability for therapeutic use. Either the modified forms have greater potency than glucagon to potentiate insulin secretion or enhanced stability in plasma or both. This potency and enhanced stability can be assessed as described below.

The standard one letter abbreviation code for amino acids is used.

The analogs of the invention which show enhanced insulin stimulating properties have the foregoing

-5-

sequence, or the C-terminal amide thereof, with at least one modification selected from the group consisting of:

(a) substitution of a neutral amino acid, arginine, or a D form of lysine for lysine at position 26 and/or 34  
5 and/or a neutral amino acid, lysine, or a D form of arginine for arginine at position 36;

(b) substitution of an oxidation-resistant amino acid for tryptophan at position 31;

(c) substitution according to at least one of:

10 Y for V at position 16;  
K for S at position 18;  
D for E at position 21;  
S for G at position 22;  
R for Q at position 23;  
15 R for A at position 24; and  
Q for K at position 26;

(d) a substitution comprising at least one of:  
an alternative small neutral amino acid for A  
at position 8;

20 an alternative acidic amino acid or neutral amino acid for E at position 9;  
an alternative neutral amino acid for G at position 10; and  
an alternative acidic amino acid for D at  
25 position 15; and

(e) substitution of an alternative neutral amino acid or the D or N-acylated or alkylated form of histidine for histidine at position 7.

30 With respect to modifications (a), (b), (d) and (e), the substituted amino acids may be in the D form, as indicated by a superscript †, e.g., C<sup>†</sup>. The amino acids substituted at position 7 can also be in the N-acylated or N-alkylated forms.

35

-6-

Thus, one aspect of the invention is directed to peptides having enhanced insulin stimulating properties analogous to the above-mentioned truncated forms of GLP-1 (7-34) to GLP-1 (7-37), as described above.

5 In another aspect, the invention is directed to peptides which show enhanced degradation resistance in plasma as compared to GLP-1 (7-37) wherein this enhanced resistance to degradation is defined as set forth below. In these analogs, any of the above-mentioned truncated  
10 forms of GLP-1 (7-34) to GLP-1 (7-37) or their C-terminal amidated forms is modified by

(a) substitution of a D-neutral or D-acidic amino acid for H at position 7, or

(b) substitution of a D-amino acid for A at  
15 position 8, or

(c) both, or

(d) substitution of an N-acylated or N-alkylated form of any naturally occurring amino acid for H at position 7.

20 Thus, analogs of the invention which are resistant to degradation include (N-acyl (1-6C) AA)<sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37) and (N-alkyl (1-6C) AA)<sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37) wherein when AA is a lysyl residue, one or both nitrogens may be alkylated or acylated. AA symbolizes any amino acid consistent  
25 with retention of insulin stimulating activity.

For substitutions of D-amino acids in the 7 and 8 positions, the D residue of any acidic or neutral amino acid can be used at position 7 and of any amino acid at position 8, again consistent with insulin stimulating  
30 activity. Either or both of position 7 and 8 can be substituted by a D-amino acid; the D-amino acid at position 7 can also be acylated or alkylated as set forth above. These modified forms are applicable not only to



-7-

GLP-1 (7-37) but also the shorter truncated analogs as set forth above.

In other aspects, the invention is directed to pharmaceutical compositions containing one or more of these peptides as active ingredients and to methods to treat Type II diabetes using these peptides or compositions thereof.

#### Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 schematically outlines the classification of amino acids as used herein.

Figure 2 gives a list of various compounds of the invention.

Figure 3 shows the results of radiolabel sequencing analysis for degradation of two analogs in plasma.

Figure 4 shows the results of various GLP-1 (7-37) analogs with changes in the amino terminal region, to displace  $^{125}\text{I}$ -GLP-1 (7-39) from amino terminal specific antiserum.

#### Modes of Carrying Out the Invention

The analogs of the invention, which are modified forms of the GLP-1(7-34), (7-35), (7-36) or (7-37) are characterized by showing greater potency than glucagon in an in vitro assay measuring insulin release from isolated rat islets in culture, or by enhanced stability in plasma or both.

#### Assays for Analogs with Enhanced Insulin Release Stimulating Properties

One group of analogs of the invention is more potent than glucagon in stimulating insulin release from islet cells. By being "more potent than glucagon in stimulating insulin release from islet cells" is meant that the analog referred to shows greater potency in an

-8-

in vitro assay selected from the group consisting of the following: Rat islets for these assays are isolated by the method of Sutton, R. et al., Transplantation (1986) 42:689-691, incorporated herein by reference. Briefly, Sprague-Dawley male rats are anesthetized and the lower end of the common bile duct is cannulated with a 2 FG cannula tied in place. The left and right hepatic ducts are then ligated separately above the region of the entry of pancreatic ducts into the biliary tree. The rats are killed by exsanguination and 3 mL Hank's solution containing 7.5 mM  $\text{CaCl}_2$ , 20 mM HEPES buffer and 1-6 mg/mL Type I collagenase are run into the cannula to uniformly distend the pancreas. The pancreas is then excised and placed in a beaker on ice prior to incubation in Hank's solution containing 20 mM HEPES buffer at 37°C.

After 13-25 min of incubation, the pancreas is removed and placed in Hank's solution containing 5 g/l bovine serum albumin and 20 mM HEPES buffer at 4°C. All of the pancreatic tissue is then gently syringed through a 14 FG needle, suspended in further Hank's solution containing HEPES as above, centrifuged at 50 g for 10 sec and the supernatant is discarded. The tissue pellet is resuspended and again gently syringed, followed by another wash, after which the dispersed tissue is passed through a nylon mesh filter of 500  $\mu$  pore size. The filtered tissue is centrifuged at 350 g for 5 sec, the supernatant discarded, and the tissue is then suspended in 25% Ficoll made up in Hank's with HEPES as above, on which was layered a discontinuous density gradient of 23%, 20%, and 11% Ficoll solutions. This density gradient was spun at 750 g for 10 min at 4°C, and the tissue obtained from the upper two interfaces was washed three times in Hank's solution and viewed through a dissecting microscope for hand picking of islets.

35

-9-

In one approach the ability of the GLP-1 analog to potentiate secretion from these Islets is then determined according to the method of Schatz, H. et al., in "Methods in Diabetes Research" (1984) Volume 1, Part C: pages 291-307, incorporated herein by reference. In this method, 5-10 islets per test tube are incubated in 1 mL Krebs-Ringer-bicarbonate buffer (KRB buffer). For testing, glucagon or the modified analog of the invention is added at 5-10  $\mu\text{g/mL}$ . The level of insulin released may be measured by the method of Jensen, S.L. et al., M J Physiol (1978) 235:E381-E386, incorporated herein by reference.

The following protocol is a preferred method to measure stimulation of insulin secretion. After collagenase digestion, the islets are allowed to recover overnight by incubation in DMEM (Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium 16 w/o glucose), 2.8 mM glucose, 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS) at 37°C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>.

The next day, islets to be used for the experiment are transferred to DMEM, no glucose, 0.2% BSA (Armour, clinical grade, made at 5% stock) for a 60 min preincubation in serum-free, glucose-free medium. Islets are picked up by Eppendorf pipette and transferred to 60 mm TC plates containing 8.0 mL medium and returned to the incubator for 60 min. Islets are counted during this transfer. (Note: each data point is 5 islets, experiments are usually performed in quadruplicate; therefore, 20 islets are used per data point.) Typically, recoveries are 150-200 islets per pancreas. Any suspect islets--too ragged or falling apart--are not used.

During the 60 min preincubation, the experiment is set up, so that all that is needed at the end of the

35

-10-

preincubation is to transfer islets in groups of 5 to experimental conditions. The experiment is set up in 48 well TC plates with 0.5 mL medium per well. To DMEM-0.2% BSA is added glucose to desired concentration (usually 2.8 mM for hypoglycemic conditions, 5.6 mM glucose for euglycemic, or 16.7 mM glucose for hyperglycemic) and test compound at various dose ranges (typically, 1 pM to 100 nM). Test compound is diluted from stock stored at -80°C and at -0.3 mM serially into phosphate buffered saline (PBS) 0.2% BSA to prevent loss on sides of tubes. After medium plus test compound is mixed, 0.5 mL each is added to 4 wells for quadruplicate data points.

After the preincubation period, 5 islets are added per well. Islets are picked up by eppendorf pipette in 25 ul volume. Incubation continues another 60 min, at which time 0.3 mL is harvested per well with care taken not to pick up islets. Wells are then rechecked for islet number. Medium is then assayed for insulin content using an insulin RIA. If medium is not immediately assayed, it is stored at -20°C until assay. Dose response curves for insulin secretion are plotted and ED<sub>50</sub> is calculated from the curves.

Higher potency as compared to glucagon is defined as either higher levels of insulin released by the analog using the same concentrations of glucagon and analog or, alternatively, the same level of insulin release but using a lower concentration of analog than glucagon.

While the foregoing assays form specific criteria for judging enhanced potency, alternative assays can also be used as substitutes for those set forth above.

An additional test for potency of the compounds of the invention measures their ability to stimulate cAMP production in RIN 1046-38 cells. This assay can be conducted as follows:

35

-11-

On day 1,  $5 \times 10^5$  RIN 1046-38 cells (Drucker, D.J., et al., Proc Natl Acad Sci USA (1987) 84:3434-3438) are seeded into individual wells of 6-well dishes with 2.5 mL M199 culture medium. On day 4, cells are re-fed with fresh medium and on day 5 the assay is performed. At this time there are  $\sim 2.0-2.5 \times 10^6$  cells per well. Assays are only performed on cell passage  $\leq 24$ .

At time -60 min, monolayers are washed twice with 2.5 mL PBS, and medium is changed to 1.0 mL of DMEM medium plus 4.5 g/l glucose and 0.1% BSA (assay medium). At 0 time, medium is aspirated and fresh assay medium, 1.0 mL, containing test compound is added. Test compound is added in 50  $\mu$ L volume of PBS plus 0.1% BSA; controls are added in vehicle alone. Incubation is continued for 0 to 60 min.

At termination, conditioned medium and monolayer are harvested to measure both extra- and intracellular cAMP content. For extracellular measurement, medium is removed and centrifuged to remove any cellular debris. For intracellular determination, after medium removal, 1.0 mL of ice cold 95% ethanol is added to monolayer. Cells are collected by scraping, lysed by two cycles of quick freeze/thawing using liquid  $N_2$ , and cell debris then removed by centrifugation. Aliquots (1/40th well content) of conditioned medium and ethanol cell extract are measured in duplicate for cAMP levels using an RIA kit by the acetylated protocol.

As above, higher potency as compared to glucagon is defined either as higher cAMP stimulation by both the analog and glucagon at the same concentration, or the same cAMP stimulation by the analog at a lower concentration.

Still other assays for measurement of enhanced potency to mediate insulin release can be used.

-12-

The ability of the compounds to potentiate the release of insulin can be tested both in vitro and in vivo. Insulin released can be detected using a standard antibody assay both in analyzing plasma in in vivo studies and in analyzing media or perfusion liquid in vitro.

For example, a useful in vitro assay uses the pancreatic infusion assay method of Penhos, J.C., et al. Diabetes (1969) 18:733-738, as employed in the method of Weir, G.C., et al. J Clin Investigat (1974) 54:1403-1412. Insulin secretion can also be measured by the method described by Holst, J.J., et al. FEBS Letters (1987) 211:169-174 (supra). Also useful as an assay for insulinitropic effect is the measurement of stimulation of adenylate cyclase in the RIN 1046-38 cell line. Drucker, D.J. et al., Proc Natl Acad Sci USA (1987) 84:3434-3438 (supra).

Inhibition of glucagon release can be shown as described by Orstov, C., et al. Endocrinol (1988) 123:2009-2013; Suzuki, S., et al. Diabetes Research: Clinical Practice (1988) 5(Supp. 1):S30 (both supra).

#### Assays for Enhanced Stability to Degradation

The therapeutic efficiency of the GLP-1 analogs of the invention can also be enhanced by providing analogs with increased half-lives in vivo. By "enhanced half-life in vivo" is meant a demonstrated ability to resist degradation in the presence of plasma according to an assay selected from the group consisting of the following. In all assays, the plasma is prepared by collecting blood into heparinized tubes, placing the tubes on ice and centrifuging at about 3,000 rpm for 10 minutes in a tabletop centrifuge. The separated plasma is stored at 4°C.

-13-

#### A. Radiolabel Sequencing:

The GLP analog is labeled by radio-iodination in position 19 using standard radiolabeling methods. After exchange into RIA buffer (50 mM  $\text{NaHPO}_4$  pH 7.4, 0.25% BSA (Armour insulin and FFA free), 0.5% BME, 0.002% polylysine (Sigma 15,000 mw), 0.05% Tween 20, 0.1%  $\text{NaN}_3$ ), the radioiodinated peptide (about  $10^5$  cpm/50 mL) and cold uniodinated peptide (20  $\mu\text{l}$  100 nM) are added into 2 ml of plasma to a final concentration of 1 nM and incubated in a circulating water bath for preset times. Total RIA buffer added to plasma never exceeds 5% of total volume. At the end of incubation, 10% bacitracin (w/v) in water is added to a final concentration of 0.1% to stop the reaction.

The plasma is then extracted using C18 Sep-Pak to separate the analog and any fragments from the bulk of the plasma proteins. Sep-Pak cartridges (Waters) are washed with 2 mL of 1-propanol, followed by 2 mL of water and then equilibrated with 2 mL of 20%  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  containing 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) (Buffer A).

The bacitracin-treated plasma is made 20%  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  with  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  containing 0.1% TFA and is expressed slowly through a 3 mL plastic syringe through the cartridge. The cartridge is then washed with two 1 mL Buffer A washes and eluted with a single 2 mL wash of 50%  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  containing 0.1% TFA (Buffer B) into a siliconized 12 x 75 glass tube. Recovery of the analog or fragments is more than 90%.

The eluates are concentrated to 100  $\mu\text{l}$  in a Speed vac and transferred to a 1.5 mL Eppendorf tube to which a 1 mL RIA buffer rinse of the original tube had been added.

To purify any analog or its fragments when the analogs of GLP-1 (7-37) are used, the concentrates are

35

-14-

treated with 5  $\mu$ l of antiserum prepared to a synthetic peptide corresponding to residues 24-37 which recognizes GLP-1, GLP-1 (7-37) but not GLP-1 (7-36). When the shorter forms of analogs are used, alternate carboxy terminal-specific antisera (prepared in the same manner but using a peptide corresponding to residues 24-34, 24-35 or 24-36 as immunogen) are used. To this is added 100  $\mu$ l of a 10% (w/v) solution of protein A-Sepharose (Pharmacia) in PBS, and the mixture is incubated overnight at 4°C with gentle rocking. The Sepharose is then pelleted with a 5 second spin in an Eppendorf centrifuge at 4°C after which the pellet is washed two times with cold RIA buffer and four times with cold PBS.

Polyclonal antisera were raised in New Zealand White rabbits against a synthetic peptide fragment corresponding to residues 24 to 37 of GLP-1 (7-37) using the method of Mosjoy, S. et al., J Biol Chem (1986) 261:11880-11889. Initial immunizations were into the inguinal lymph nodes and used Freund's complete adjuvant. Two subcutaneous boosts were performed at 1 week intervals after the initial immunization and used Freund's incomplete adjuvant. For a single immunization or boost 100  $\mu$ g peptide and 100  $\mu$ g methylated BSA dissolved in 0.3 mL phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) were emulsified with 0.9 mL adjuvant. Bleeds (50 mL) began at week 6 after the initial immunization and continued at 1 month intervals thereafter. Repeat boosts were performed as above when titers dropped noticeably from the level of the previous bleed.

Serum was prepared by allowing the blood to clot overnight at 4°C. The clot was pelleted by centrifugation at 2000 g for 15 minutes and the serum removed. Serum is stored in aliquots at -20 or -80°C.



-15-

The peptides are then eluted from the antibody protein-A sepharose complex with three 100  $\mu$ l washes of Buffer B. The combined 300  $\mu$ l of wash are then applied directly to an ABI model 477A sequencer used according to the manufacturer's instructions. Fractions from each cycle are then diverted for counting. Counting can be effected in 4 mL aqueous scintillant (ACS, Amersham).

The cycle at which label appears indicates the extent of degradation from the N-terminus. If no degradation from the N-terminus has occurred in the GLP-1 (7-37) analog, all of the label will appear in the 13th cycle, corresponding to the tyrosine at position 19; if degradation has occurred, the label will appear in earlier cycles.

15        B. Assay by RP-HPLC:

While the foregoing method is a clear criterion for exhibiting a longer half-life in plasma, alternative forms of the assay for this property can also be used. In one convenient assay, the analog can be assessed for degradation into fragments using reverse phase-HPLC, since the fragments have different retention times from the analog per se. In this assay, the analog is added to plasma for various times and recovered similarly to the method described above for radiolabel sequencing analysis. Specifically, the analog at a concentration of 100 nM in RIA buffer is spiked into 1 mL plasma to a final concentration of 1 nM and after incubation in 37°C circulating water bath for various preset times, the reaction is stopped by bringing the plasma to 0.1% (w/v) in bacitracin.

30        The peptides are then purified by Sep-Pak extraction as described above. The eluates are concentrated to about 1 mL on a Speed-vac, diluted with 1 mL distilled water, frozen at 80°C and lyophilized

35

-16-

overnight. The powder is resuspended in 0.5 mL Buffer C (0.1% TFA in water) per mL starting plasma and 0.25 mL are injected on a Hewlett-Packard 1090L liquid chromatograph using an Alltech C18 column (0.45 x 25 cm; 10  $\mu$ m particle size) with a Brownlee 2 cm C18 guard column. The extraction is monitored at OD<sub>214</sub> throughout the run and the solvent flow rate was 1 mL/minute. A gradient between Buffer C and Buffer D (0.1% TFA in acetonitrile) is set up over a 40 minute run time. The gradient starts at 35% D is held for the first 2 minutes after injection and then increased to 42% D over 24 minutes. The gradient is then increased to 60% D over the next two minutes, held at this level for 2 minutes and returned to 35% D over the next 2 minutes. The %D remains at 35% for the remaining 8 minutes of the run. Fractions are collected at 0.5 minute intervals for the first 30 minutes of each run and dried in a Speed-vac. The samples can be assayed for the presence of analog or fragment using RIA (measuring competition with labeled GLP-1 (7-37) for binding to C-terminal specific antiserum) or by any conventional or convenient alternative method.

Radioimmunoassays for the amino or carboxyl terminus of GLP-1 (7-37) use a single antibody displacement format. Binding of <sup>125</sup>I-GLP-1 (7-37) to antibody is incrementally displaced by increasing concentrations of unlabeled peptide in solution. Antibody bound iodinated peptide is separated from free iodinated peptide in solution by precipitation of the antibody-peptide complex with Pansorbin™ (Boheringer Mannheim). The resulting pellet is then counted on a gamma counter.

-17-

C. Loss of Binding to N-Terminal Specific  
Antibodies;

A third approach to assessment of half-life in plasma utilizes polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies specifically prepared to the N-terminus which will fail to bind degraded analog. These antisera were raised against a synthetic peptide corresponding to GLP-1 (7-22) which contains an additional cysteine residue at the carboxyl terminus and is specifically coupled to KLH via the cysteine using mal-sac-HSNA as described by Aldwin, L. et al. Analytical Biochem (1987) 164:494-501. Polyclonal antibodies were generated in New Zealand white rabbits by giving a primary immunization into the inguinal lymph nodes of 500  $\mu$ g conjugate emulsified with Freund's complete adjuvant and then two subsequent boosts of 200  $\mu$ g each in Freund's incomplete adjuvant at 2 week intervals. Blood (50 mL) is collected monthly thereafter and boosts are performed if titers are low. For generation of monoclonal antibodies, Balb/c mice were immunized intraperitoneally with 200  $\mu$ g of conjugate in 0.5 ml Freund's complete adjuvant. Mice were boosted biweekly with 100  $\mu$ g conjugate in 0.5 ml Freund's incomplete adjuvant. Cells isolated from the spleens of these mice were fused with Fox-NY cells to produce monoclonal cell lines. Monoclonal secreting cell lines are produced using the standard Kohler-Millstein technology. Monoclonal supernatants and polyclonal sera are screened using an ELISA method for binding to GLP-1 (7-37) but not to GLP-1 (8-37). The specificity is confirmed in standard solution phase RIA.

The kinetics of degradation of GLP-1 (7-37) are followed by adding the analog to human plasma in RIA buffer, generally 10  $\mu$ L of 100 x concentrated peptide is added to 1 mL of plasma to obtain the desired

-18-

concentration; the sample is then incubated in 37°C water bath and triplicate 50  $\mu$ L aliquots are removed at various times. The aliquots are immediately ethanol precipitated for radioimmunoassay using a competition for binding of the N-terminal specific antibody with radioiodinated GLP-1 (7-37). Disappearance of the ability to compete with the radioiodinated GLP-1 (7-37) peptide indicates degradation of the analog.

In any of these assays, the analog tested has enhanced stability if it is less rapidly degraded than GLP-1 (7-37).

#### The Analogs

The analogs of the invention having higher potency than glucagon or having enhanced degradation resistance are modified forms of GLP-1 (7-34) through GLP-1 (7-37) wherein, in some instances, amino acids of certain classes are substituted for the naturally occurring residues.

Amino acid residues can be generally subclassified into four major subclasses as follows and as shown in Figure 1.

Acidic: The residue has a negative charge due to loss of H ion at physiological pH and the residue is attracted by aqueous solution so as to seek the surface positions in the conformation of a peptide in which it is contained when the peptide is in aqueous medium at physiological pH.

Basic: The residue has a positive charge due to association with H ion at physiological pH and the residue is attracted by aqueous solution so as to seek the surface positions in the conformation of a peptide in which it is contained when the peptide is in aqueous medium at physiological pH.

35

-19-

Neutral/nonpolar: The residues are not charged at physiological pH and the residue is repelled by aqueous solution so as to seek the inner positions in the conformation of a peptide in which it is contained when the peptide is in aqueous medium. These residues are also designated "hydrophobic" herein.

Neutral/polar: The residues are not charged at physiological pH, but the residue is attracted by aqueous solution so as to seek the outer positions in the conformation of a peptide in which it is contained when the peptide is in aqueous medium.

It is understood, of course, that in a statistical collection of individual residue molecules some molecules will be charged, and some not, and there will be an attraction for or repulsion from an aqueous medium to a greater or lesser extent. To fit the definition of "charged", a significant percentage (at least approximately 25%) of the individual molecules are charged at physiological pH. The degree of attraction or repulsion required for classification as polar or nonpolar is arbitrary, and, therefore, amino acids specifically contemplated by the invention have been specifically classified as one or the other. Most amino acids not specifically named can be classified on the basis of known behavior.

Amino acid residues can be further subclassified as cyclic or noncyclic, and aromatic or nonaromatic, self-explanatory classifications with respect to the side chain substituent groups of the residues, and as small or large. The residue is considered small if it contains a total of 4 carbon atoms or less, inclusive of the carboxyl carbon. Small residues are, of course, always nonaromatic.

-20-

For the naturally occurring protein amino acids, subclassification according to the foregoing scheme is as follows (see also Figure 1).

- 5        Acidic: Aspartic acid and Glutamic acid;
- Basic/noncyclic: Arginine, Lysine;
- Basic/cyclic: Histidine;
- 10       Neutral/polar/small: Glycine, Serine and Cysteine;
- Neutral/polar/large/nonaromatic: Threonine,
- 15       Asparagine, Glutamine;
- Neutral/polar/large/aromatic: Tyrosine;
- Neutral/nonpolar/small: Alanine;
- 20       Neutral/nonpolar/large/nonaromatic: Valine, Isoleucine, Leucine, Methionine;
- Neutral/nonpolar/large/aromatic: Phenylalanine,
- 25       and Tryptophan.

The gene-encoded amino acid proline, although technically within the group neutral/nonpolar/large/cyclic and nonaromatic, is a special case due to its known effects on the secondary conformation of peptide chains, and is not, therefore, included in this specific defined group.

Certain commonly encountered amino acids, which are not encoded by the genetic code, include, for example,

35

-21-

beta-alanine (beta-ala), or other omega-amino acids, such as 3-amino propionic, 4-amino butyric and so forth, alpha-aminoisobutyric acid (Aib), sarcosine (Sar), ornithine (Orn), citrulline (Cit), homoarginine (Har), t-butylalanine (t-BuA), t-butylglycine (t-BuG), N-methylisoleucine (N-MeIle), phenylglycine (Phg), and cyclohexylalanine (Cha), norleucine (Nle), cysteic acid (Cya) and methionine sulfoxide (MSO). These also fall conveniently into particular categories.

10       Based on the above definition,  
Sar and beta-ala are neutral/nonpolar/small;  
t-BuA, t-BuG, N-MeIle, Nle and Cha are  
neutral/nonpolar/large/nonaromatic;  
Har and Orn are basic/noncyclic;  
15       Cya is acidic;  
Cit, Acetyl Lys, and MSO are  
neutral/polar/large/nonaromatic; and  
Phg is neutral/nonpolar/large/aromatic.  
See, also, Figure 1.

20       The various omega-amino acids are classified according to size as neutral/nonpolar/small (beta-ala, i.e., 3-aminopropionic, 4-aminobutyric) or large (all others).

25       Other amino acid substitutions for those encoded in the gene can also be included in peptide compounds within the scope of the invention and can be classified within this general scheme.

30       The nomenclature used to describe GLP-1 analog compounds of the present invention follows the conventional practice wherein the amino group is assumed to the left and the carboxy group to the right of each amino acid in the peptide. In the formulas representing selected specific embodiments of the present invention, the amino- and carboxy-terminal groups, although often  
35

-22-

not specifically shown, will be understood to be in the form they would assume at physiological pH values, unless otherwise specified. Thus, the N-terminal  $H_2^+$  and C-terminal- $O^-$  at physiological pH are understood to be present though not necessarily specified and shown, either in specific examples or in generic formulas.

The foregoing describes the status of the termini at neutral pH; it is understood, of course, that the acid addition salts or the basic salts of the peptides are also included within the scope of the invention. At high pH, basic salts of the C-terminus and carboxyl-containing side chains may be formed from nontoxic pharmaceutically acceptable bases, and suitable counter-ions include, for example,  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Ca^{++}$  and the like. Suitable pharmaceutically acceptable nontoxic organic cations can also be used as counter ions. In addition, as set forth above, the peptides may be prepared as the corresponding amides.

Suitable acid addition salts with respect to the N-terminus or amino group-containing side chains include the salts formed from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, sulfuric, or phosphoric acid and those formed from organic acids such as acetic, citric, or other pharmaceutically acceptable nontoxic acids.

In the peptides shown, each encoded residue where appropriate is represented by a single letter designation, corresponding to the trivial name of the amino acid, in accordance with the following conventional list:

30

35



-23-

	<u>Amino Acid</u>	<u>One-Letter Symbol</u>
	Alanine	A
	Arginine	R
5	Asparagine	N
	Aspartic acid	D
	Cysteine	C
	Glutamine	Q
	Glutamic acid	E
10	Glycine	G
	Histidine	H
	Isoleucine	I
	Leucine	L
	Lysine	K
15	Methionine	M
	Phenylalanine	F
	Proline	P
	Serine	S
	Threonine	T
20	Tryptophan	W
	Tyrosine	Y
	Valine	V

25 The amino acids not encoded genetically are abbreviated as indicated above.

In the specific peptides of the present application, the L-form of any amino acid residue having an optical isomer is intended unless otherwise expressly indicated by a dagger (†) superscript. While the  
30 residues in the analogs of the invention peptides are normally in the natural L optical isomer form, one or two, preferably one, amino acid in addition to a specified "same-amino-acid-D form," substitution for the

35

-24-

naturally occurring amino acid may be in the D configuration.

In the notation used in designating specific analogs, the positions modified are shown as superscripts to the replacement amino acid; thus, (H<sup>†</sup>)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37) is the noted GLP-1(7-37) form with the D form of histidine substituted at position 7;  
(S)<sup>22</sup>(R)<sup>23</sup>(R)<sup>24</sup>(Q)<sup>26</sup>-GLP-1(7-37) refers to the 7-37 GLP form with serine at position 22, arginine at positions 23 and 24, and glutamine at position 26.

#### Preferred Embodiments

##### A. Enhanced Stimulatory Analogs

For analogs with increased insulin-stimulating activity, particularly preferred analog compositions of the invention are those wherein only limited numbers of modifications or substitutions, as compared to GLP-1 truncated forms are made. Thus, preferred are those analogs where the modifications described in only one or two of the paragraphs (a)-(e) set forth above in the Disclosure section occurs.

Thus, among the preferred analogs of the invention are those wherein the (7-34), (7-35), (7-36) or (7-37) form of GLP-1 has been modified only by substitution of a neutral amino acid, arginine, or a D form of lysine for lysine at position 26 and/or 34 and/or a neutral amino acid, lysine, or a D form of arginine for arginine at position 36 (paragraph (a)). Particularly preferred are those wherein the amino acid substituted for lysine at positions 26 and 34 is selected from the group consisting of K<sup>†</sup>, G, S, A, L, I, Q, R, R<sup>†</sup> and M, and for arginine at position 36 is selected from the group of K, K<sup>†</sup>, G, S, A, L, I, Q, M, and R<sup>†</sup>.

-25-

Also preferred are analogs wherein the sole modification is the substitution of an oxidation-resistant amino acid for tryptophan at position 31 (paragraph (b)). Particularly favored substitutions are selected from the group consisting of F, V, L, I, A, and Y.

Also preferred are those analogs wherein the only modification is at least one of those specific substitutions set forth in paragraph (c). Particularly preferred are those analogs wherein combined substitutions of S for G at position 22, R at positions 23 and 24 for Q and A respectively, and Q for K at position 26 have been made, or substitutions of Y for V at position 16 and K for S at position 18 have been made, or these substitutions plus D for E at positions 21 have been made.

Also preferred are analogs wherein the sole modifications are those set forth in paragraph (d). Particularly preferred among these are those wherein the small neutral amino acid substituted for alanine at position 8 is selected from the group consisting of S, S<sup>†</sup>, G, C, C<sup>†</sup>, Sar, A<sup>†</sup>, beta-ala, and Aib; and/or the acidic or neutral amino acid substituted for glutamic at position 9 is selected from the group consisting of E<sup>†</sup>, D, D<sup>†</sup>, Cya, T, T<sup>†</sup>, N, N<sup>†</sup>, Q, Q<sup>†</sup>, Cit, MSO, and acetyl-K; and/or the alternative neutral amino acid substituted for glycine at position 10 is selected from the group consisting of S, S<sup>†</sup>, Y, Y<sup>†</sup>, T, T<sup>†</sup>, N, N<sup>†</sup>, Q, Q<sup>†</sup>, Cit, MSO, acetyl-K, F, and F<sup>†</sup>; and/or wherein D is substituted for E at position 15.

Also preferred are analogs wherein position 7 alone has been altered (paragraph (e)). Preferred substitutions are those wherein the amino acid substituted for histidine at position 7 is selected from

-26-

the group consisting of  $H^{\dagger}$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Y^{\dagger}$ ,  $F$ ,  $F^{\dagger}$ ,  $R$ ,  $R^{\dagger}$ , Orn, Orn $^{\dagger}$ , M, M $^{\dagger}$ , N-formyl-H, N-formyl-H $^{\dagger}$ , N-acetyl-H, N-acetyl-H $^{\dagger}$ , N-isopropyl-H, N-isopropyl-H $^{\dagger}$ , N-acetyl-K, N-acetyl-K $^{\dagger}$ , P, and P $^{\dagger}$ .

5. Also preferred are embodiments with a combination of only two of the above-referenced classes of modified forms, in addition to the following specific embodiments.

The following specific analogs are preferred:

- 10 (H $^{\dagger}$ )<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (Y)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (N-acetyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (N-isopropyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (A $^{\dagger}$ )<sup>8</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (E $^{\dagger}$ )<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 15 (D)<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (D $^{\dagger}$ )<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37);  
 (F $^{\dagger}$ )<sup>10</sup>-GLP-1(7-37)  
 (S)<sup>22</sup>(R)<sup>23</sup>(R)<sup>24</sup>(Q)<sup>26</sup>-GLP-1(7-37); and  
 (S)<sup>8</sup>(Q)<sup>9</sup>(Y)<sup>16</sup>(K)<sup>18</sup>(D)<sup>21</sup>-GLP-1(7-37).

20 B. Enhanced Stability Analogs

Preferred forms of analogs with enhanced stability also have only one, or at most two, amino acid modifications.

- 25 Preferred substitutions for the histidine at position 7 include the D-forms of acidic or neutral amino acids or the D-forms of histidines. Preferred are P $^{\dagger}$ , D $^{\dagger}$ , E $^{\dagger}$ , N $^{\dagger}$ , Q $^{\dagger}$ , L $^{\dagger}$ , V $^{\dagger}$ , I $^{\dagger}$  and H $^{\dagger}$ .

- The histidine at position 7, or a replacement (D or L), can also be N-alkylated (1-6C) or N-acylated (1-6C).  
 30 Alkyl groups are straight or branched chain (including cyclic) hydrocarbyl residues of the indicated member of C. Acyl groups are of the formula RCO - wherein R is alkyl as defined above. Preferred alkyl groups are  $\iota$ -propyl,  $\alpha$ -propyl and ethyl; preferred acyl are acetyl and  
 35

-27-

propionyl. Preferred residues which may be alkylated or acylated include P, D, E, N, Q, V, L, I, K and H in either the D or L form.

Preferred substitutions for alanine at position 8 are the D-forms of P, V, L, I and A; also preferred are the D-forms of D, E, N, Q, K, T, S and H.

It is understood, as is demonstrated below, that some specific analogs show both enhanced insulin release stimulating activity and enhanced stability.

#### Preparation

The analogs of the invention can be prepared using standard solid-phase techniques for the synthesis of peptides. As is generally known, peptides of the requisite length can be prepared using commercially available equipment and reagents following the manufacturers' instructions for blocking interfering groups, protecting the amino acid to be reacted, coupling, deprotection, and capping of unreacted residues. Suitable equipment can be obtained, for example, from Applied BioSystems in Foster City, California, or Biosearch Corporation in San Raphael, California.

In a preferred method, the peptides are synthesized using standard automated solid-phase synthesis protocols employing t-butoxycarbonyl-alpha-amino acids with appropriate side-chain protection. Completed peptide is removed from the solid phase support with simultaneous side-chain deprotection using the standard hydrogen fluoride method. Crude peptides are further purified by semi-preparative reverse phase-HPLC (Vydac C<sub>18</sub>) using acetonitrile gradients in 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid (TFA). The peptides are vacuum dried to remove acetonitrile and lyophilized from a solution of 0.1% TFA

-28-

in water. Purity is verified by analytical RP-HPLC. The peptides can be lyophilized and then solubilized in either water or 0.01 M acetic acid at concentrations of 1-2 mg/mL by weight.

5       The use of the aforementioned synthetic methods is needed if nonencoded amino acids or the D forms of amino acids occur in the peptides. However, for peptides which are gene-encoded, recourse can also be had to re-combinant techniques using readily synthesized DNA  
10       sequences in commercially available expression systems.

#### Formulation and Administration

      The analogs of the invention are useful in the treatment of Type II diabetes. The analogs can be  
15       administered systemically in a variety of formulations, as is generally known in the art. Formulations appropriate for particular modes of administration for peptides are set forth in, for example, Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, latest edition, Mack Publishing  
20       Company, Easton, Pennsylvania. In general, the formulations utilize an effective amount of the analog or mixtures of analogs and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

      A variety of modes of administration are effective  
25       in systemic treatment, such as injection, including intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, and intraperitoneal injection; transmembrane or transdermal administration, using suitable suppositories or sprays; and, if properly formulated, oral administration. Suitable  
30       excipients for injection include various physiological buffers, such as Hank's solution and Ringer's solution; suitable transmembrane or transdermal formulations contain penetrants such as bile salts or fusidates; and  
35       typical oral formulations contain protective agents which

-29-

inhibit the digestion of the active ingredient. Also available are various slow-release formulations involving macromolecular matrices such as pyrrolidones and methyl-cellulose. Alternate drug delivery systems include liposomes and microemulsions. A variety of formulations are workable, and the provision of appropriate formulations for the selected peptides and administration routes is generally understood by practitioners.

A typical dosage range for the compounds of the invention is about 1 pg/kg-1 mg/kg body weight, although these are approximations depending upon a large number of factors including the potency of the analog, its circulating half-life, the individual characteristics of the subject, and the like. Optimization of administration of insulin for diabetic treatment of individuals is well established, and similar optimization protocols are employed here.

#### Examples

The following examples are intended to illustrate, but not to limit, the invention.

##### Example 1

##### Enhanced Insulin Stimulation by Analogs of the Invention

As shown in Figure 2, analogs of the invention having a variety of substituents modifying the native structure have been prepared. Some of these analogs have been tested in the adenylate cyclase assay referenced above, with the results shown in Table 1.

-30-

TABLE 1

<u>Positive Controls</u>		<u>ED50 nM Duplicate Assays</u>	
5	GLP-1(7-37)	0.16	0.25
	GLP-1(7-36) (amide)	0.16	0.20
<u>Related Peptides</u>			
10	Glucagon	80.0	140
	Secretin	NR	-
	GIP	10.0	37.5
	GRF	NR	-
<u>Negative Controls</u>			
15	GLP-1(1-37)	>1000	2900
	GLP-1(2-37)	-	-
	GLP-1(3-37)	70	81
	GLP-1(4-37)	130	200
	GLP-1(5-37)	150	750-970
<u>Analogs</u>			
20	(H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	1.1	2.2
	(Y) <sup>7</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	5.0	5.0
	(N-acetyl-H) <sup>7</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	15.5	-
	(N-isopropyl-H) <sup>7</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	15.5	-
	(K) <sup>7</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	350.0	-
25	(A <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>8</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	0.40	0.55
	(E <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	55.0	74.0
	(D) <sup>9</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	0.17	0.28
	(D <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	0.90	0.90
30	(F <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	12.0	23.0
	(S) <sup>22</sup> (R) <sup>23</sup> (R) <sup>24</sup> (Q) <sup>26</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	0.94	1.8
	(S) <sup>8</sup> (Q) <sup>9</sup> (Y) <sup>16</sup> (K) <sup>18</sup> (D) <sup>21</sup> -GLP-1(7-37)	0.31	-



-31-

The various analogs of the invention thus show a useful range of potencies in the insulintropic assay.

### Example 2

5

#### Enhanced Stability of GLP-1 Analogs

##### A. Demonstration of Mode of Inactivation

The GLP-1 (7-37) truncated hormone was radioiodinated and the purified peptide was incubated with plasma and assayed by radiolabel sequencing as described hereinabove. The sequencing was done on samples at time zero, 15 minutes and 60 minutes. At time zero, a single peak of radioactivity was found at cycle 13 indicating no degradation. After 15 minutes, the amount of radioactivity in cycle 13 was reduced, and that in cycle 11 was enhanced. After 60 minutes of incubation, virtually all of the counts appeared at cycle 11.

It thus appears that a single dipeptidyl aminopeptidase cleavage is responsible for the degradation of the GLP-1 (7-37) peptide.

The foregoing results are consistent with degradation as measured by RIA using N-terminal specific and C-terminal specific antisera. When incubated with plasma as described above and tested by RIA, no diminution in the ability of the recovered fragment to inhibit binding of radiolabeled GLP-1 (7-37) to carboxy terminal-specific antibody was found; however, the ability to inhibit binding to the amino terminal-specific antibody decreased almost to zero after 1 hour.

##### B. GLP-1 (7-37) Analogs Tested by Radiolabel Sequencing

The radiolabel sequencing method of degradation analysis was conducted using a GLP-1 (7-37) analog which

35

-32-

contained either D-Asp in the 9-position or D-Ala in the 8-position. The results of this assay are shown in Figure 3. Figure 3A shows the results for (D<sup>†</sup>)<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37) and Figure 3B shows the results for (A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37). As shown in these figures, the (D<sup>†</sup>)<sup>9</sup> analog  
5 degrades in a manner similar to GLP-1 (7-37); on the other hand, the (A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup> analog showed almost no degradation after 60 minutes.

10 C. Analogues Tested by RIA

The N-terminal specific antibody can be used to measure the degradation of analogs only if it is able to cross-react with these analogs, which themselves contain alterations in the N-terminus. Figure 4 shows the  
15 results for analogs modified at positions 7, 8 and 9. (Y)<sup>7</sup>, (H<sup>†</sup>)<sup>7</sup> and (A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup> appear to be capable, although at high concentrations, of cross-reactivity; (D<sup>†</sup>)<sup>9</sup> is not. The cross-reacting peptides were incubated with plasma for 60 minutes at high concentrations (10-100 nM) and  
20 tested by RIA using RIA against the N-terminal specific antibody. Consistent with the results in paragraph B, the (A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup> analog was not degraded after 60 minutes, nor was the (H<sup>†</sup>)<sup>7</sup> analog. However, the (Y)<sup>7</sup> analog was degraded.

25

D. Analogues Shown Protease Resistant by HPLC

The resistance of various analogs to degradation as compared to GLP-1 (7-37) was also tested by HPLC as described above. The incubation in plasma was for 60  
30 minutes; either degradation was not observed or was complete after this time. The results are shown in Table 2.

35

-33-

TABLE 2

	<u>Analog</u>	<u>Resistance to Degradation</u>
5	(H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	+
	(N-acetyl-H) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	+
	(N-isopropyl-H) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	+
	(Y) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-
10	(K) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-
	(N-acetyl-K) <sup>7</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	+
	(S) <sup>8</sup> (Q) <sup>9</sup> (Y) <sup>16</sup> (K) <sup>18</sup> (D) <sup>21</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-
	(A <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>8</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	+
	(D <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-
15	(E <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-
	(Q) <sup>9</sup> GLP-1 (7-37)	-

20

25

30

35

-34-

Claims

1. A peptide useful as a therapeutic for Type II  
5 diabetes, said peptide being more potent than glucagon in  
stimulating insulin release from islet cells, and said  
peptide consisting essentially of GLP-1(7-34),  
GLP-1(7-35), GLP-1(7-36), or GLP-1(7-37) or the  
C-terminal amide form thereof, having at least one  
10 modification selected from the group consisting of:
- (a) substitution of a neutral amino acid, arginine,  
or a D form of lysine for lysine at position 26 and/or 34  
and/or a neutral amino acid, lysine, or a D form of  
arginine for arginine at position 36;
  - 15 (b) substitution of an oxidation-resistant amino  
acid for tryptophan at position 31;
  - (c) substitution according to at least one of:
    - Y for V at position 16;
    - K for S at position 18;
    - 20 D for E at position 21;
    - S for G at position 22;
    - R for Q at position 23;
    - R for A at position 24; and
    - Q for K at position 26;
  - 25 (d) a substitution comprising at least one of:
    - an alternative small neutral amino acid for A  
at position 8;
    - an alternative acidic amino acid or neutral  
amino acid for E at position 9;
    - 30 an alternative neutral amino acid for G at  
position 10; and
    - an alternative acidic amino acid for D at  
position 15; and

35

-35-

(e) substitution of an alternative neutral amino acid or the D or N-acylated or alkylated form of histidine for histidine at position 7

wherein for (a), (b), (d) and (e), the substituted amino acids can optionally be in the D form and the amino acids substituted at position 7 can optionally be in the N-acylated or N-alkylated form.

2. The peptide of claim 1 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (a) of claim 1 and wherein the amino acid substituted for lysine at positions 26 and/or 34 is selected from the group consisting of K<sup>†</sup>, G, S, A, L, I, Q, M, R and R<sup>†</sup> and the amino acid substituted for arginine at position 36 is selected from the group consisting of K, K<sup>†</sup>, G, S, A, L, I, Q, M, and R<sup>†</sup>,

optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 1.

3. The peptide of claim 1 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (b) of claim 1 and wherein the amino acid substituted for tryptophan at position 31 is selected from the group consisting of F, V, L, I, A and Y,

optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 1.

4. The peptide of claim 1 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (c) of claim 1 and wherein combined substitutions of S for G at position 22, R at positions 23 and 24 for Q and A respectively, and Q for K at position 26 have been made, or substitutions of Y for V at position 16 and K for S at

-36-

position 18 have been made, or these substitutions plus D for E at positions 21 have been made,

optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 1.

5

5. The peptide of claim 1 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (d) of claim 1 and wherein the small neutral amino acid substituted for alanine at position 8 is selected from the group consisting of S, S<sup>†</sup>, G, C, C<sup>†</sup>, Sar, A<sup>†</sup>, beta-ala, and Aib and the acidic or neutral amino acid substituted for glutamic at position 9 is selected from the group consisting of E<sup>†</sup>, D, D<sup>†</sup>, Cya, T, T<sup>†</sup>, N, N<sup>†</sup>, Q, Q<sup>†</sup>, Cit, MSO, and acetyl-K, and the alternative neutral amino acid substituted for glycine at position 10 is selected from the group consisting of S, S<sup>†</sup>, Y, Y<sup>†</sup>, T, T<sup>†</sup>, N, N<sup>†</sup>, Q, Q<sup>†</sup>, Cit, MSO, acetyl-K, F, and F<sup>†</sup>,

10

15

optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 1.

20

6. The peptide of claim 1 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (e) of claim 1 and wherein the amino acid substituted for histidine at position 7 is selected from the group consisting of H<sup>†</sup>, Y, Y<sup>†</sup>, F, F<sup>†</sup>, R, R<sup>†</sup>, Orn, Orn<sup>†</sup>, M, M<sup>†</sup>, N-formyl-H, N-formyl-H<sup>†</sup>, N-acetyl-H, N-acetyl-H<sup>†</sup>, N-isopropyl-H, N-isopropyl-H<sup>†</sup>, N-acetyl-K; N-acetyl-K<sup>†</sup>, P, and P<sup>†</sup>,

25

optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 1.

30

35

-37-

7. The peptide of claim 1 which is selected from the group consisting of

- (H<sup>†</sup>)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
5 (Y)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(N-acetyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(N-isopropyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
10 (E<sup>†</sup>)<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(D)<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(D<sup>†</sup>)<sup>9</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
(F<sup>†</sup>)<sup>10</sup>-GLP-1(7-37),  
15 (S)<sup>22</sup>(R)<sup>23</sup>(R)<sup>24</sup>(Q)<sup>26</sup>-GLP-1(7-37), and  
(S)<sup>8</sup>(Q)<sup>9</sup>(Y)<sup>16</sup>(K)<sup>18</sup>(D)<sup>21</sup>-GLP-1(7-37).

8. A peptide useful as a therapeutic for Type II  
20 diabetes, said peptide having enhanced resistance to  
degradation in plasma as compared to GLP-1 (7-37) and  
said peptide consisting essentially of GLP-1(7-34),  
GLP-1(7-35), GLP-1(7-36), or GLP-1(7-37) or the  
C-terminal amide form thereof, having at least one  
25 modification selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) substitution of the D form of a neutral or  
acidic amino acid or the D form of histidine for  
histidine at position 7;  
(b) substitution of a D form of an amino acid for  
30 alanine at position 8; and  
(c) substitution of an N-acylated (1-6C) or N-  
alkylated (1-6C) form of an alternate amino acid or of  
histidine for histidine at position 7.

-38-

9. The peptide of claim 8 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (a) of claim 8 and wherein the D form of the amino acid substituted for histidine at position 7 is selected from the group consisting of P<sup>†</sup>, D<sup>†</sup>, E<sup>†</sup>, N<sup>†</sup>, Q<sup>†</sup>, L<sup>†</sup>, V<sup>†</sup>, I<sup>†</sup> and H<sup>†</sup>,  
5 optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 8.

10. The peptide of claim 8 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (b) of claim 8 and wherein the D-amino acid at position 8 is selected from the group consisting of P<sup>†</sup>, V<sup>†</sup>, L<sup>†</sup>, I<sup>†</sup>, and A<sup>†</sup>,  
10 optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 8.

11. The peptide of claim 8 wherein the only modification is as set forth in paragraph (c) of claim 8 and wherein the alkylated or acetylated amino acid is selected from the group consisting of P, D, E, N, Q, V,  
15 L, I, K AND H,  
20 optionally in combination with a modification as set forth in one additional paragraph of claim 8.

12. A pharmaceutical composition useful in the treatment of diabetes Type II which comprises an effective amount of the peptide of claim 1 or 8 in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.  
25

13. A method to treat Type II diabetes which method comprises administering to a subject in need of such treatment an effective amount of the peptide of claim 1 or 8 or a pharmaceutical composition thereof.  
30

35



-39-

14. The peptide of claim 8 which is selected from the group consisting of

(H<sup>†</sup>)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37),  
(N-acetyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37),  
(N-isopropyl-H)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37),  
(N-acetyl-K)<sup>7</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37), and  
(A<sup>†</sup>)<sup>8</sup>-GLP-1 (7-37).

1/6  
Figure 1

Acidic: Glu (E), Asp (D); Cysteic (Cya)

Basic:   
     Non-cyclic: Lys (K), Arg (R); Ornithine (Orn);  
                   Homoarginin (Har)  
     Cyclic: His (H)

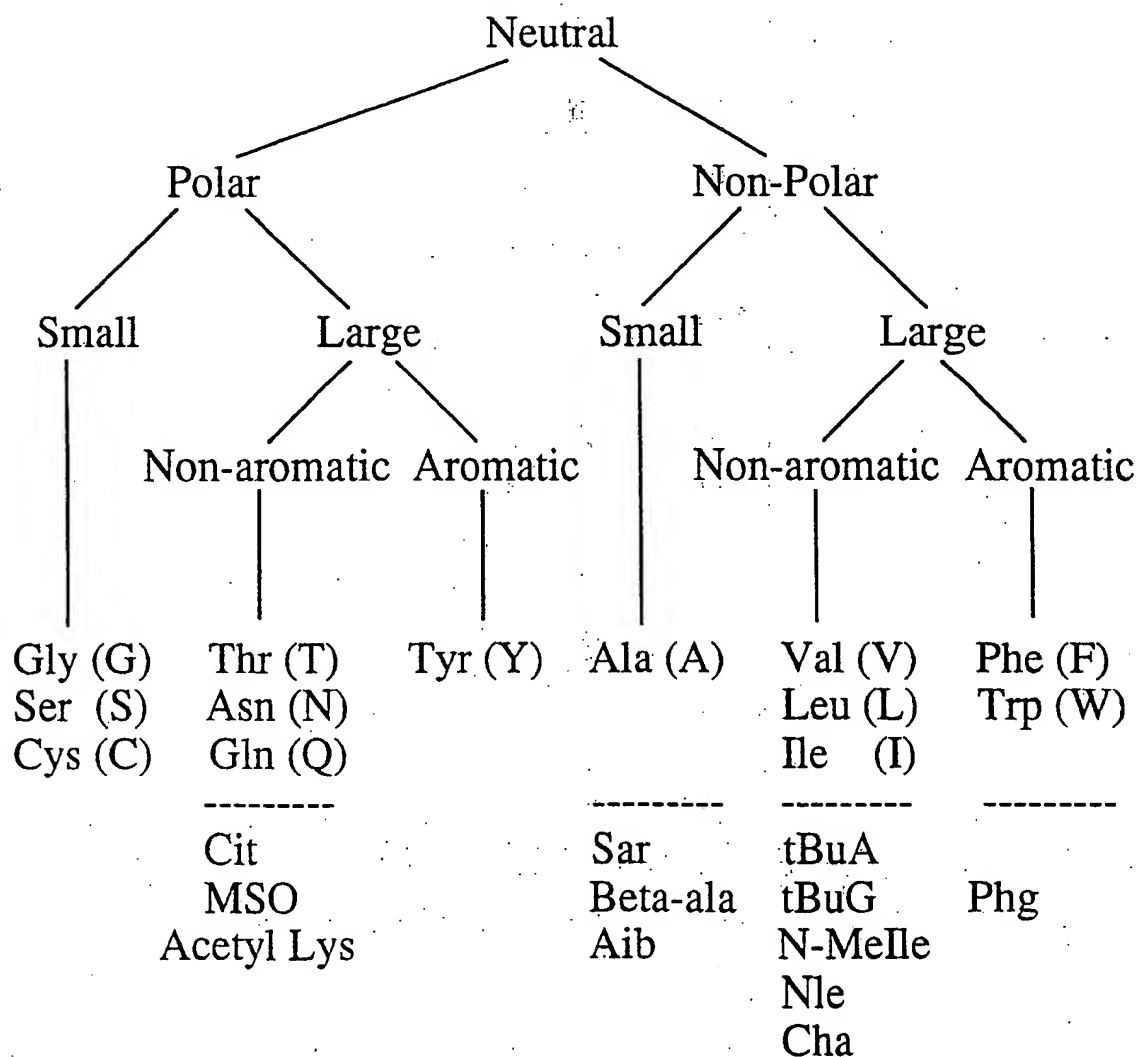


FIGURE 2

The following are modified forms, as shown, of  
GLP-1(7-37):

A-1	(H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-11	(M <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>
A-2	(Y) <sup>7</sup>	A-12	(N-formyl-H) <sup>7</sup>
A-3	(Y <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-13	(N-formyl-H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>
A-4	(F) <sup>7</sup>	A-14	(N-acetyl-H) <sup>7</sup>
A-5	(F <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-15	(N-acetyl-H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>
A-6	(R) <sup>7</sup>	A-16	(N-isopropyl-H) <sup>7</sup>
A-7	(R <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-17	(N-isopropyl-H <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>
A-8	(Orn) <sup>7</sup>	A-18	(K) <sup>7</sup>
A-9	(Orn <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-19	(K <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>
A-10	(M) <sup>7</sup>	A-20	(N-acetyl-K) <sup>7</sup>
A-21	(N-acetyl-K <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-31	(beta-Ala) <sup>8</sup>
A-22	(P) <sup>7</sup>	A-32	(Aib) <sup>8</sup>
A-23	(P <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>7</sup>	A-33	(E <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup>
A-24	(A <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>8</sup>	A-34	(D) <sup>9</sup>
A-25	(Sar) <sup>8</sup>	A-35	(D <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup>
A-26	(C) <sup>8</sup>	A-36	(Cya) <sup>9</sup>
A-27	(C <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>8</sup>	A-37	(T) <sup>9</sup>
A-28	(G) <sup>8</sup>	A-38	(T <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup>
A-29	(S) <sup>8</sup>	A-39	(N) <sup>9</sup>
A-30	(S <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>8</sup>	A-40	(N <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup>
A-41	(Q) <sup>9</sup>	A-51	(T <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>
A-42	(Q <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>9</sup>	A-52	(N) <sup>10</sup>
A-43	(Cit) <sup>9</sup>	A-53	(N <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>
A-44	(MSO) <sup>9</sup>	A-54	(Q) <sup>10</sup>
A-45	(Acetyl-K) <sup>9</sup>	A-55	(Q <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>
A-46	(S) <sup>10</sup>	A-56	(Cit) <sup>10</sup>
A-47	(S <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>	A-57	(MSO) <sup>10</sup>
A-48	(Y) <sup>10</sup>	A-58	(Acetyl-K) <sup>10</sup>
A-49	(Y <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>	A-59	(F <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>10</sup>
A-50	(T) <sup>10</sup>	A-60	(S) <sup>22</sup> (R) <sup>23</sup> (R) <sup>24</sup> (Q) <sup>26</sup>

**SUBSTITUTE SHEET**

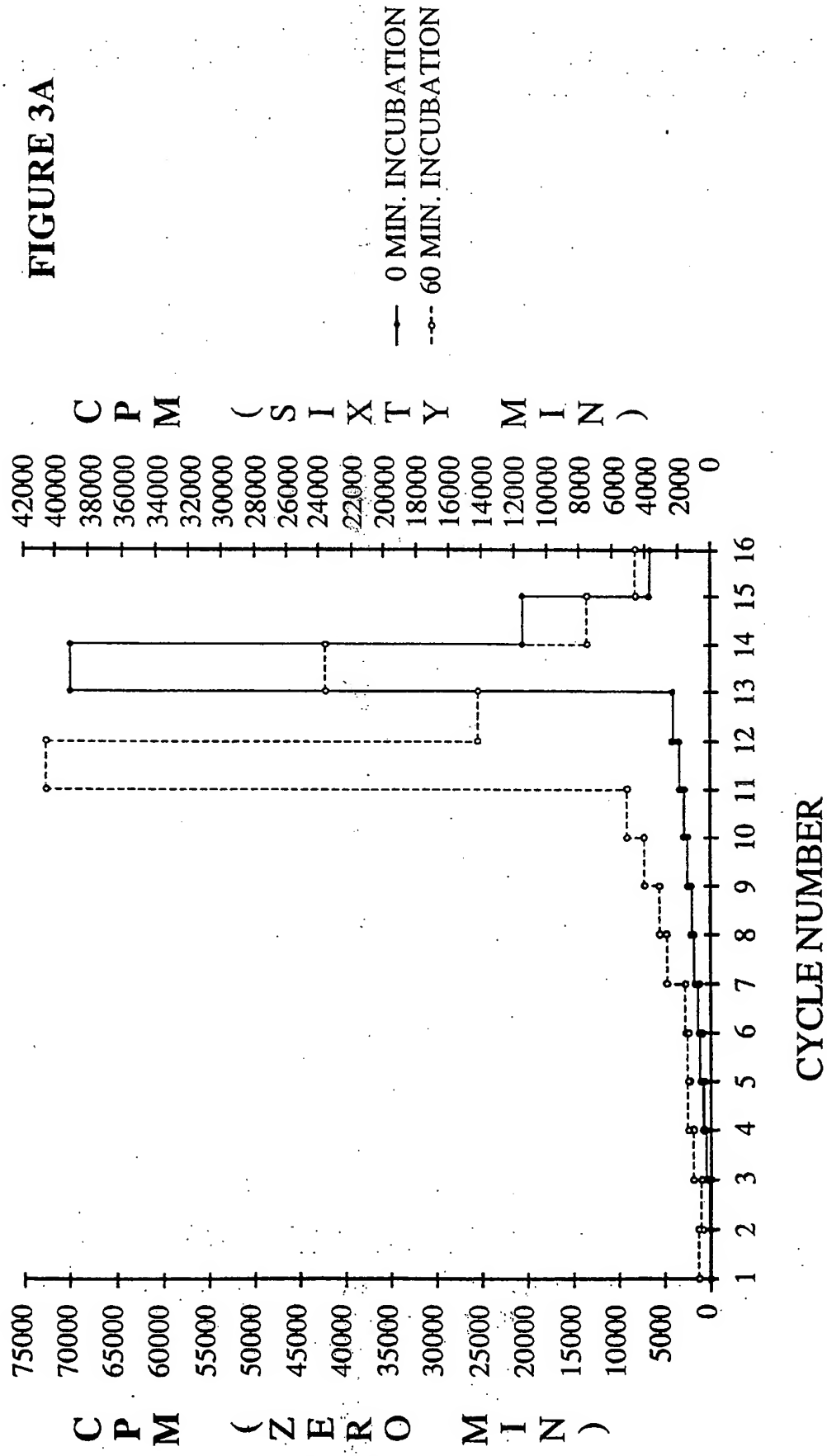
FIGURE 2. con't

A-61	(S) <sup>8</sup> (Q) <sup>9</sup> (Y) <sup>16</sup> (K) <sup>18</sup> (D) <sup>21</sup>	A-71	(A) <sup>25</sup>
A-62	(T) <sup>16</sup> (K) <sup>18</sup>	A-72	(Q) <sup>26</sup>
A-63	(Y) <sup>16</sup>	A-73	(K <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>26</sup>
		A-74	(G) <sup>26</sup>
A-65	(E) <sup>15</sup>	A-75	(S) <sup>26</sup>
A-66	(K) <sup>18</sup>	A-76	(A) <sup>26</sup>
A-67	(D) <sup>21</sup>	A-77	(L) <sup>26</sup>
A-68	(S) <sup>22</sup>	A-78	(I) <sup>26</sup>
A-69	(R) <sup>23</sup>	A-79	(R <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>26</sup>
A-70	(R) <sup>24</sup>	A-80	(M) <sup>26</sup>
A-81	(K <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>34</sup>	A-91	(L) <sup>31</sup>
A-82	(G) <sup>34</sup>	A-92	(I) <sup>31</sup>
A-83	(S) <sup>34</sup>	A-93	(A) <sup>31</sup>
A-84	(A) <sup>34</sup>	A-94	(Y) <sup>31</sup>
A-85	(L) <sup>34</sup>	A-95	(R <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>34</sup>
A-86	(I) <sup>34</sup>	A-96	(Q) <sup>36</sup>
A-87	(Q) <sup>34</sup>	A-97	(K) <sup>36</sup>
A-88	(M) <sup>34</sup>	A-98	(K <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>36</sup>
A-89	(F) <sup>31</sup>	A-99	(G) <sup>36</sup>
A-90	(V) <sup>31</sup>	A-100	(L) <sup>36</sup>
		A-101	(I) <sup>36</sup>
		A-102	(Q) <sup>36</sup>
		A-103	(M) <sup>36</sup>
		A-104	(R <sup>†</sup> ) <sup>36</sup>
		A-105	(S) <sup>36</sup>
		A-106	(A) <sup>36</sup>

4/6

FIGURE 3A

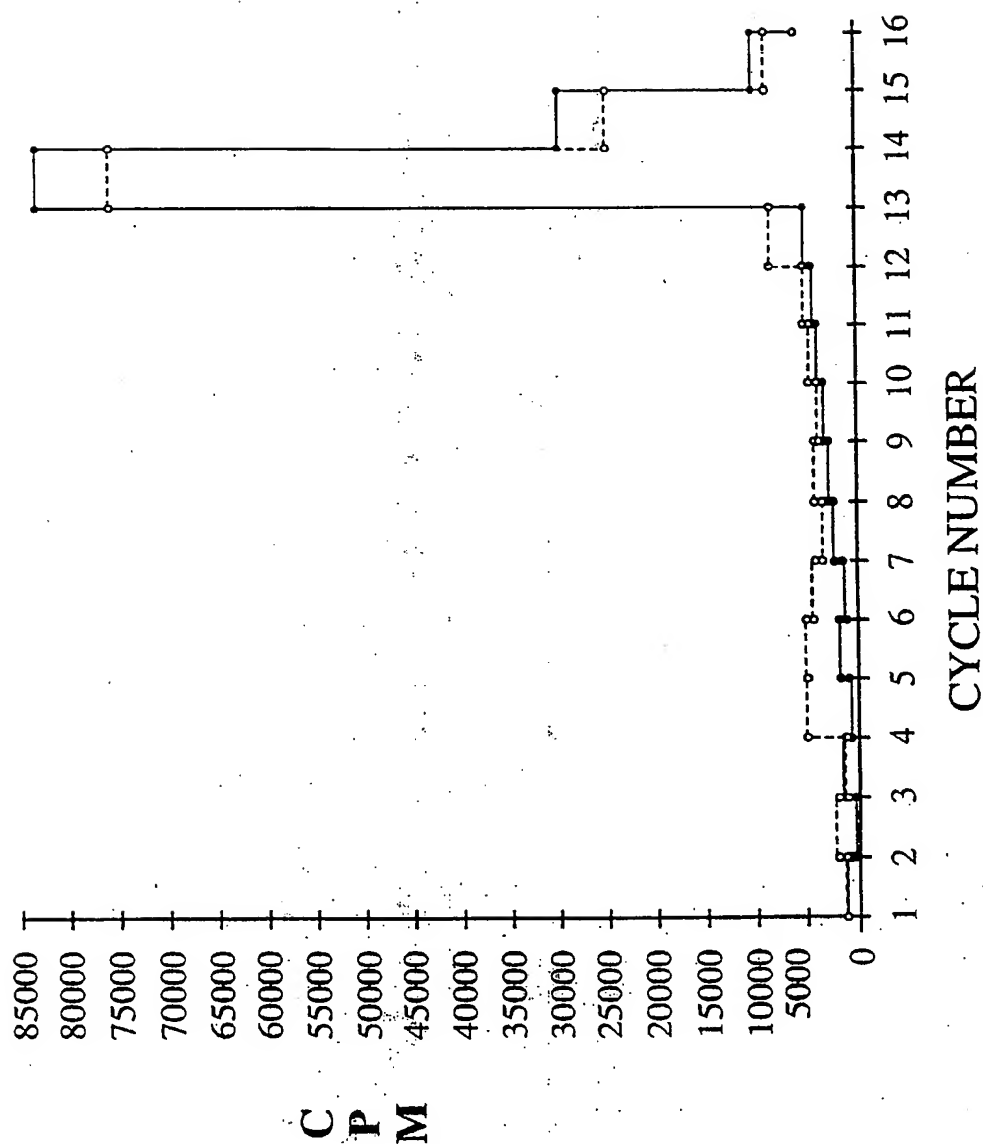
RADIOSEQUENCING OF D-9D GLP-1(7-37);  
AFTER INCUBATION IN HUMAN PLASMA



5/6

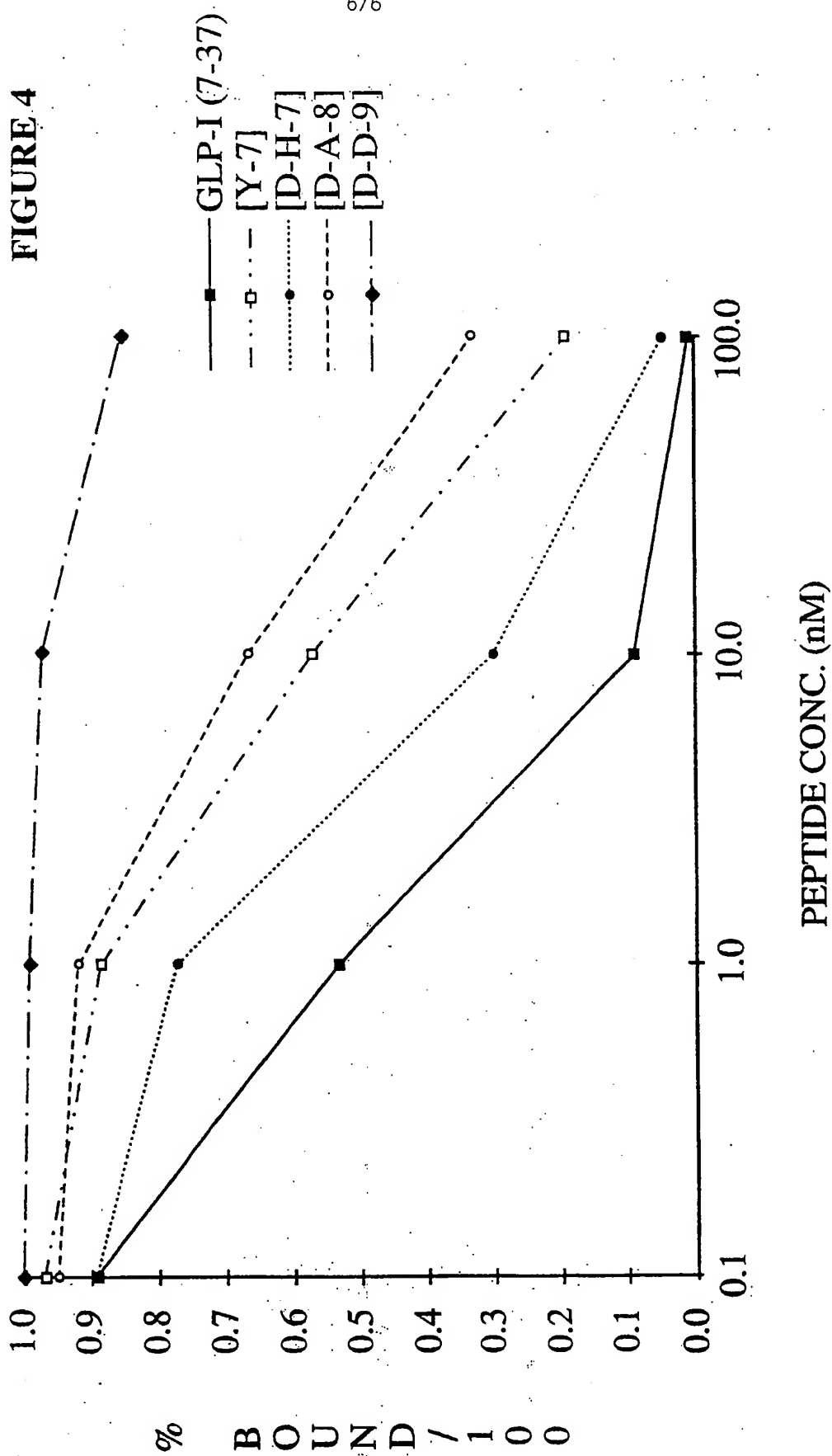
FIGURE 3B

RADIOSEQUENCE ANALYSIS OF D-8A GLP-1(7-37);  
AFTER HUMAN PLASMA INCUBATION



6/6

DISPLACEMENT OF [125] - I GLP-1(7-37) FROM;  
AS #2192 WITH ANALOGS



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No PCT/US91/00500

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (If several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>3</sup> According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC IPC(5): C07K 7/34, 7/10; A61K 37/02, 37/28 U.S. CL.: 530/308; 514/12		
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>4</sup></div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; font-size: small;"> <span>Classification System <sup>1</sup></span> <span>Classification Symbols</span> </div> <div style="padding-top: 10px;">           U.S.CL.                      530/308,324; 514/11,12,13,14         </div> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: x-small; margin-top: 10px;">           Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation            to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>5</sup> </div>		
<b>APS TEXT SEARCH</b>		
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b>		
Category <sup>6</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>16</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>17</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>18</sup>
Y	WO,A, 87/06941 (HABENER)  19 NOVEMBER 1987, see entire document.	1-7,13
Y	ENDOCRINOLOGY, VOLUME 126, No.4, issued 1990, D.Gefel et al., "Glucagon-like peptide-I analogs: effects on insulin secretion and adenosine 3',5'-monophosphate formation, pages 2164-2168, see entire document.	1-7,13
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; font-size: x-small;"> <div style="width: 48%;"> <p><sup>*</sup> Special categories of cited documents: <sup>15</sup></p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> </div> <div style="width: 48%;"> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p> </div> </div>		
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>		
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search <sup>1</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: large;">07 MARCH 1991</div>		Date of Mailing of this International Search Report <sup>2</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: large;">29 APR 1991</div>
International Searching Authority <sup>1</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: large;">ISA/US</div>		Signature of Authorized Officer <sup>20</sup> <div style="text-align: center;">            AVIS DAVENPORT         </div>



FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET

V. ☐ OBSERVATIONS WHERE CERTAIN CLAIMS WERE FOUND UNSEARCHABLE<sup>1</sup>

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2) (a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out<sup>2</sup>, specifically:
  
3. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they are dependent claims not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of PCT Rule 6.4(a).

VI. ☒ OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION IS LACKING<sup>3</sup>

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application as follows:

. See Attachment

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims of the international application.
2. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims of the international application for which fees were paid, specifically claims:
3. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claim numbers:

1-7 and 13 (Telephone Practice)

4. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, the International Searching Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

Attachment to PCT/ISA/210

VI. Observations Where Unity of Invention is Lacking

- I. Claims 1-7 and 13 are drawn to the peptides which are more potent than glucagon in stimulating insulin release from islet cells classified in class 530, subclass 308.
- II. Claims 8-11 and 14 are drawn to the peptides with enhanced resistance to degradation classified in class 530, subclass 308.
- III. Claim 12 is drawn to the pharmaceutical composition classified in class 514, subclass 12

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☒ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKewed/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☒ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☐ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**